



Super-N

General Information

A Few Words About Safety

Your safety, and the safety of others, is very important. Operating this vehicle safely is an important responsibility.

To help you make informed decisions about safety, we have provided operating procedures and other information on labels and in this manual. This information alerts you to potential hazards that could hurt you or others.

Of course, it is not practical or possible to warn you about all the hazards associated with operating or maintaining your vehicle. You must use your own good judgement. You will find this important safety information in a variety of forms, including:

- **Safety Labels** - on the vehicle.
- **Safety Messages** - preceded by a safety alert symbol  and one of three signal words: **DANGER**, **WARNING**, or **CAUTION**. These signal words mean:

DANGER

You **WILL** be **KILLED** or **SERIOUSLY HURT** if you don't follow instructions.

WARNING

You **CAN** be **KILLED** or **SERIOUSLY HURT** if you don't follow instructions.

CAUTION

You **CAN** be **HURT** if you don't follow instructions.

- **Safety Headings** - such as Important Safety Precautions.
- **Safety Section** - such as Safe Driving.
- **Instructions** - how to use this vehicle correctly and safely.

This entire book is filled with important safety information - please read it carefully.

Symbols   or   on labels attached to your vehicle are to remind you to read this owner's manual for proper and safe operation of your vehicle.

 or  is colour-coded to indicate "danger" (red), "warning" (orange), or "caution" (yellow).

 Label Locations ► P.52

About Other Displays



This mark denotes advice for preventing vehicle damage or malfunction, or that you should be careful when using something.



Indicates that a feature is customisable.

About This Manual

About this Owner's Guide

The Owner's Guide included with your vehicle contains information relating to safety, and information needed for handling unexpected situations. This information has been excerpted from the Web Manual, which contains all information about your vehicle. This guide should remain in your vehicle so that you can check it when needed.

Make sure to read the Web Manual before driving your vehicle.

Web Manual

All the most up-to-date manual information for your vehicle is available online. To view this information, access the Honda website for your country.

These manuals cover all models of your vehicle. You may find descriptions of equipment and features that are not on your particular model.

The images throughout these manuals are only examples and may not be representative of your particular model.

System updates and specification changes may cause some sections to not reflect the specifications of your vehicle.

Digital Key

For more information on Digital key, please visit the URL below.

<https://hondanews.eu/eu/en/corporate/media/photos/69919/honda-motor-europe-bracknell-headquarters>

System Updates Terms & Conditions

General

Your vehicle has an application that allows your Display Audio to automatically search for Honda software updates that are specific to your Display Audio and its connected devices (initially, once a week via Wi-Fi or every four (4) weeks via Telematics Control Unit (TCU)*. Queries may occur more or less frequently due to internet outages, retries, direct user action, WAP push from the server, or a change in query policy on the Honda servers). This application periodically transmits to our servers a limited amount of vehicle and device information (Vehicle Identification Number (VIN), the Model Type (MT) Identification Number, Hardware and Software Part Number, Serial Number, Software Version, preferred language, Internet Protocol (IP) address, Transaction Log (alert or update viewing, update download and installation, software status), etc.). When the application finds an update from the server, the application initially asks permission to download and install the update. Where available, in your settings menu, you may elect to automatically download and install these updates, or you may elect to manually update the system.

When your Display Audio searches our servers for updates or alerts, we will automatically provide you with the opportunity to update your devices or transmit the update or alert directly to your Display Audio. We will also maintain on our servers a log of the updates or alerts that are installed.

Your Personal Data

Should the aforementioned information transmitted to Honda constitute personal information in your region, please note that this information will be treated in strict accordance with the rules and regulations outlined in this notice as well as applicable data protection laws.

The terms of our privacy notice are incorporated into these terms by reference and your use of system updates will be subject to the privacy notice. Our privacy notice sets out information about how we and any named third-parties will process any personal data we collect from you or that you provide to us via the application. See the Honda website for further details.

Honda collects, uses, and stores your personal data for the reasons set out below:

- to deliver system updates and related services
- to improve and optimize system updates, products, and services
- to respond to user questions and complaints
- to maintain internal record keeping
- where necessary for Honda's legitimate interests, as listed below, and where our interests are not overridden by your data protection rights

*: Not available on all models

- as otherwise described in Honda's Privacy Notice and Vehicle Data Privacy Notice

Protecting our legitimate business interests and legal rights includes, but is not limited to, use in connection with compliance, regulatory, auditing, legal claims (including disclosure of such information in connection with legal process or litigation), as well as other ethics and compliance reporting requirements. Honda will also convert personal data into anonymous data and use it (normally on an aggregated statistical basis) for uses such as market research and analysis, to improve system updates, to analyze trends, and to assess the success of software update releases. Aggregated personal information does not personally identify you or any other use of system updates.

Honda may share this data with Honda's worldwide support organization or affiliated Honda companies, or other third-parties engaged by Honda for the purposes of rendering support services in connection with system support.

Event Data Recorders

Your vehicle is equipped with several devices commonly referred to as Event Data Recorders. They record various types of real time vehicle data such as SRS airbag deployment and SRS system components failure.

This data belongs to the vehicle owner and may not be accessed by anyone else except as legally required or with the permission of the vehicle owner.

However this data may be accessed by Honda, its authorised dealers and authorised repairers, employees, representatives and contractors only for the purpose of the technical diagnosis, research and development of the vehicle.

Service Diagnostic Recorders

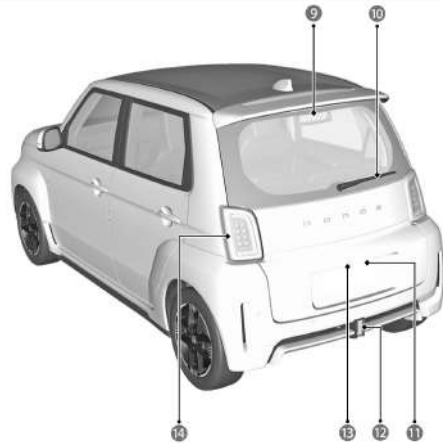
Your vehicle is equipped with service-related devices that record information about powertrain performance and driving conditions. The data can be used to help technicians diagnose, repair and maintain the vehicle. This data may not be accessed by anyone else except as legally required or with the permission of the vehicle owner. However this data may be accessed by Honda, its authorised dealers and authorised repairers, employees, representatives and contractors only for the purpose of the technical diagnosis, research and development of the vehicle.

Contents

1	Before Driving	11
About the Electric Vehicle's System ► 12 Check Before Driving ► 18 Child Safety ► 27 Airbags ► 43 Post-Collision Braking System ► 51 Safety Labels ► 52 Key ► 53 Locking/Unlocking ► 58 Steering Wheel ► 65 Seats ► 66 Seat Belts ► 73 Mirrors ► 79 Windows ► 81 Tailgate ► 83 Load Limit ► 85 Towing a Trailer ► 86		
2	Driving Operation	87
Turn Power System On or Off ► 88 Shifting ► 91 Braking ► 95 Starting and Driving ► 103 Parking Your Vehicle ► 105 Rear View Camera ► 106 Charging ► 108 Turn Signals/Light Switches ► 118 Wipers and Washers ► 125 Defroster ► 128 Driving Features ► 130		
3	Controls	140
Interior Lights ► 141 Interior Convenience Items ► 143 Seat Heaters ► 147 Heated Steering Wheel ► 148 Climate Control System ► 149 In-Vehicle Infotainment ► 153 Display Audio Basic Operations ► 161 Display Audio Other Operations ► 180 Display Audio Customized Features ► 190 General Information on the Audio System ► 198		
4	Safety Driving Assist System	207
Honda SENSING ► 208 Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS) ► 216 Low Speed Braking Control ► 223 Road Departure Mitigation System ► 227 Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow ► 232 Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) ► 241 Traffic Jam Assist ► 245 Traffic Sign Recognition System ► 250 Parking Sensor System ► 254		
5	About Your Instrument Panel	259
Indicators ► 260 Gauges ► 268 Driver Information Interface ► 271		
6	Maintenance	281
Before Performing Maintenance ► 282 Maintenance Under the Bonnet ► 284 Checking and Maintaining Wiper Blades ► 292 Checking and Maintaining Tyres ► 295 12-Volt Battery ► 300 Climate Control System Maintenance ► 305 Cleaning ► 307		
7	Handling the Unexpected	311
Tools ► 312 When a Lightbulb Goes Out ► 313 Remote Transmitter Care ► 314 If a Tyre Goes Flat ► 317 Handling of the jack ► 326 Power System Won't Start ► 327 If the 12-volt Battery Is Dead ► 330 When a Warning Appears ► 332 Fuses ► 334 Emergency Towing ► 340 If You Cannot Unlock the Charge Lid ► 342 If You Cannot Disengage the Charging Connector ► 343 If You Cannot Open the Tailgate ► 344 Emergency Call (eCall) ► 345		
8	Vehicle Information	349
Specifications ► 350 Identification Numbers ► 352 Devices that Emit Radio Waves ► 353 Declaration of Conformity Content Outline ► 356 Open Source Licence ► 357		

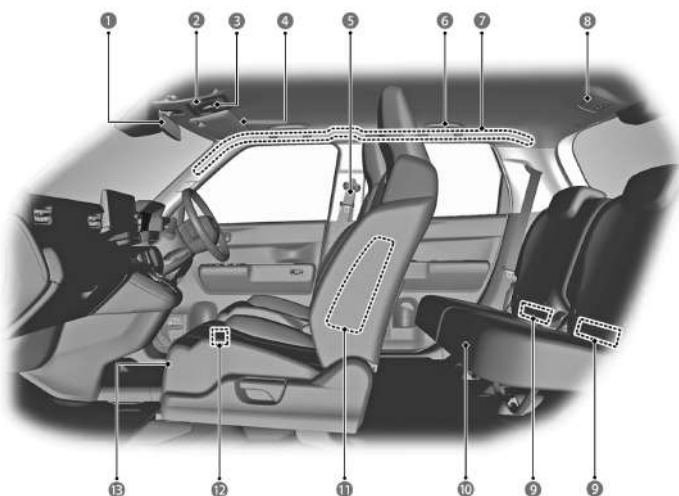
1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
Index

Visual Index



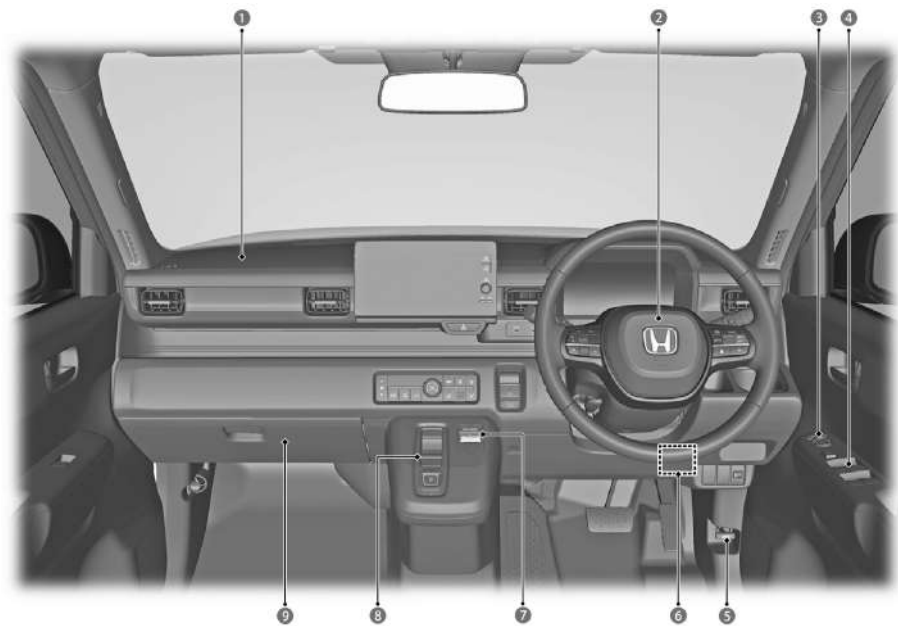
1 Maintenance Under the Bonnet	► 284
2 Windscreen Wipers	► 125
	► 292
3 Front Wide View Camera	► 212
4 Power Door Mirrors	► 79
Side Turn Signal/Emergency Indicator Lights	► 118
	► 313
5 Door Lock/Unlock Control	► 59
6 Tyres	► 295
	► 317
7 Headlights	► 118
	► 313
Position/Daytime Running Lights	► 118
	► 121
	► 313
Front Turn Signal/Emergency Indicator Lights	► 118
	► 313

8 How to Charge	► 112
	► 114
9 High-Mount Brake Light	► 313
10 Rear Wiper	► 126
	► 293
11 Opening/Closing the Tailgate	► 84
Rear Licence Plate Light	► 313
12 Rear Fog Light	► 120
	► 313
13 Rear View Camera	► 106
14 Brake Lights	► 313
Taillights	► 118
	► 313
Rear Turn Signal/Emergency Indicator Lights	► 118
	► 313
Back-Up Lights	► 313



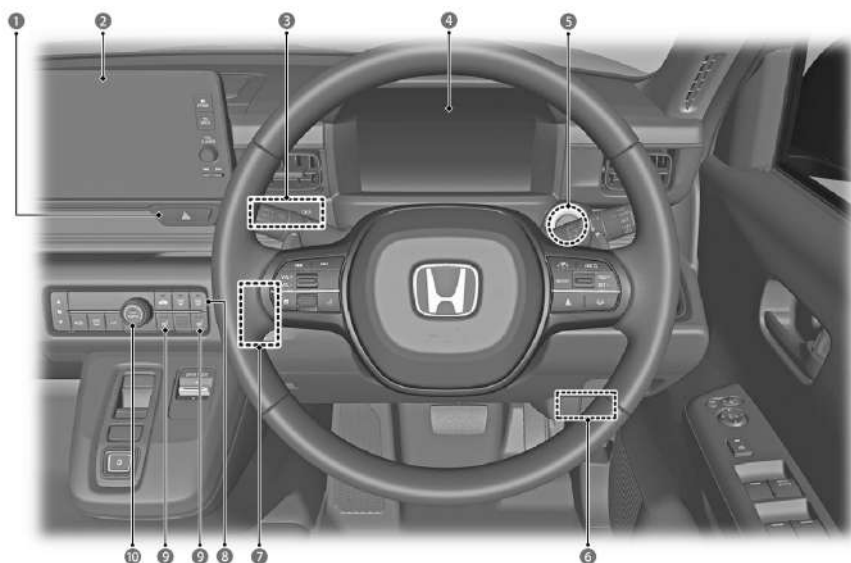
1	Rearview Mirror	► 79
2	 Interior light	► 141
	Map Lights	► 142
3	 SOS Button	► 347
4	Sun Visors	
	Vanity Mirrors	
5	Seat Belts	► 73
6	Grab Handle	

7	Side Curtain Airbags	► 47
8	Interior light	► 141
9	 Lower Anchorage Points to Secure a Child Restraint System	► 34
10	Rear Seat	► 69
11	Side Airbags	► 46
12	Accessory Power Socket	► 143
13	Front Seat	► 68



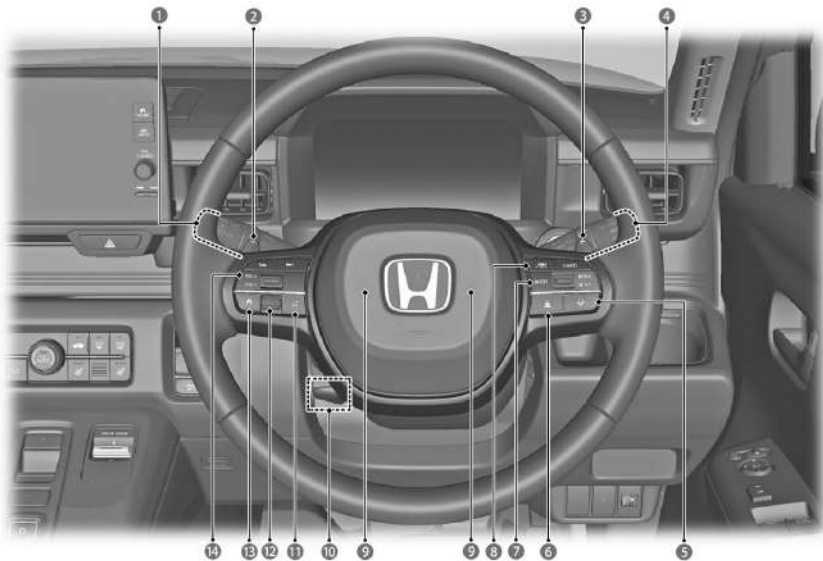
❶ Passenger's Front Airbag	► 44
❷ Driver's Front Airbag	► 44
❸  Door Mirror Controls	► 79
❹ Power Window Switches	► 81
❺  Bonnet Release Handle	► 284

❻ Interior Fuse Box	► 336
❼ DRIVE MODE Switch	► 130
❽ Shift Button	► 91
❾ Glove Box	► 143



1		Hazard Warning Button	
2		Audio System	►153
3		USB Ports	►155
4		System Indicators	►260
		Gauges	►268
		Driver Information Interface	►271
5		POWER Button	►88
6		Heated Steering Wheel Button	►148
		Headlight Adjuster Dial	►121

7		Electric Parking Brake Switch	►95
		Automatic Brake Hold Button	►98
8		Rear Demister Button	►128
9		Seat Heater Buttons	►147
10		Climate Control System	►149



1	Headlights	► 118
	Turn Signals	► 118
	Rear Fog Light	► 120
2	- paddle	► 132
3	+ paddle	► 132
4	Wipers/Washers	► 125
5	Button	► 242
6	Interval Button	► 236
7	BOOST Button	► 130
8	Button	► 233
9	Horn (Press an area around)	
10	Steering Wheel Adjustments	► 65
11	(Talk) Button	► 156
12	Left Selector Wheel	► 271

13	(Home) Button	► 271
14	Audio Remote Controls	► 156

Before Driving

About the Electric Vehicle's System

About the Electric Vehicle	12
High Voltage System and Battery	13

Check Before Driving

For Safe Driving	18
Your Vehicle's Safety Features	20
Driving Preparation	21
Precautions While Driving	23
Modifications and Accessories	24

Child Safety

Protecting Child Passengers	27
Safety of Infants and Small Children	29
Installing a Child Restraint System	34
Safety of Larger Children	40

Airbags

About Your Airbags	43
Airbag System Components	43
Front Airbags (SRS)	44
Side Airbags	46
Side Curtain Airbags	47
Airbag System Indicators	48
Airbag Care	49

Post-Collision Braking System

About the Post-Collision Braking System	51
---	----

Safety Labels

Label Locations	52
-----------------	----

Key

Details on the Key	53
Built-in Key	56
Key Number Tag	57

Locking/Unlocking

Using the Remote Transmitter	58
Using the Keyless Access System	59
Super Locking	60

Locking/Unlocking the Doors Using a key	61
Locking a Door Without Using a Key	62
Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the Inside	62
Childproof Door Locks	63
What to Do If	64

Steering Wheel

Adjusting the Steering Wheel	65
------------------------------	----

Seats

Adjusting the Seat	66
Adjusting the Front Seat Positions	68
Adjusting the Rear Seat Positions	69
Rear Seat Reminder	72

Seat Belts

About Your Seat Belts	73
Fastening a Seat Belt	75
Seat Belt Inspection	77
Anchorage Points	78

Mirrors

About Mirrors	79
Interior Rearview Mirror	79
Power Door Mirrors	79

Windows

Opening/Closing the Power Windows	81
-----------------------------------	----

Tailgate

Precautions for Opening/Closing the Tailgate	83
Opening/Closing the Tailgate	84

Load Limit

About Load Limit	85
------------------	----

Towing a Trailer

About Towing a Trailer	86
------------------------	----

About the Electric Vehicle's System

About the Electric Vehicle

This vehicle uses stored electricity to power an electric propulsion motor. The efficiency of an electric vehicle (and the vehicle's range) is most impacted by the driver's driving style. Climate control system usage also has a strong impact, with heavy usage negatively affecting the vehicle's range.

Components



① Electric Motor:

Provides direct power to the wheels. Also, the electric motor provides electricity to the High Voltage battery through regenerative braking.

② High Voltage Battery:

The High Voltage battery stores electricity and supplies electricity to the motor.

High voltage parts and high voltage wires in this vehicle are sheathed in electromagnetic shielding material; therefore, the amount of electromagnetic waves emitted is no greater than those emitted by household appliances or the electrical parts in conventional vehicles.

Battery types

There are two types of batteries used in this vehicle: a standard 12-volt battery that powers the airbags, the interior and exterior lights, and other standard 12-volt systems: and the High Voltage battery that is used to power the propulsion motor and recharge the 12-volt battery.

Charging the High Voltage Battery

You can recharge the High Voltage battery by using an appropriately configured charger at home or elsewhere, or by using a high-speed charger at a public charging station.

🔍 Before Charging ▶ P.108

🔍 About Charging ▶ P.110

Regenerative Energy and Regenerative Braking

When decelerating or while driving downhill, the electric motor acts as a generator that recovers a portion of the electrical energy that was used to accelerate the vehicle. If you release the accelerator pedal or depress the brake pedal while driving, the vehicle decelerates and generates electricity.

» When the High Voltage battery is fully charged or its temperature is too cold/hot, or other factors are affecting the condition of the battery, the regenerative braking system may not be activated.

You can adjust the rate of deceleration by operating the paddles on the steering wheel when the deceleration paddle selector or single pedal control are in use.

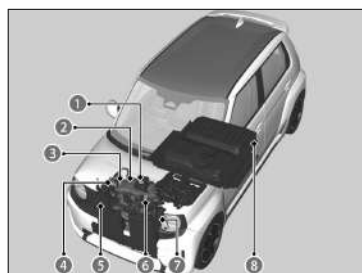
 Deceleration Paddle Selector ▶ P.132

 Single Pedal Control ▶ P.134

You may hear the sound of motor regenerative operation to regenerate energy. Also, you may hear a sound from the brake system when braking at low speeds or when the brake system switches operation.

High Voltage System and Battery

This vehicle has high voltage components such as the High Voltage battery, high voltage cables (identified by their orange covers), drive unit, and high temperature parts such as the radiator. Labels with handling warnings are attached to these components.



- ① Climate Control Coolant Reserve Tank Cap
- ② Power Control Unit
- ③ A/C Compressor
- ④ High Voltage System Coolant Tank Cap A
- ⑤ Charge Lid
- ⑥ High Voltage System Coolant Tank Cap B
- ⑦ Electric Motor
- ⑧ High Voltage Battery

⚠ WARNING

This vehicle has high voltage circuits and parts. Failure to observe the following precautions can result in burns or electric shock.

- Do not remove, disassemble, or replace the high voltage parts, cables (orange) or their connectors.

Only a qualified technician should handle any electrical equipment. For inspection and repair, consult a dealer.

Warning Labels

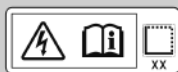
■ Climate Control Coolant Reserve Tank Cap



■ High Voltage System Coolant Tank Cap A, High Voltage System Coolant Tank Cap B



Power Control Unit



Charge Lid



Characteristics of High Voltage Battery

The High Voltage battery gradually discharges even if the vehicle is not in use. As a result, if your vehicle is parked for an extended period of time, the battery level may get low.

Keeping your vehicle's battery level low can shorten the battery life. To maintain the battery while the vehicle is not in use, recharge the battery at least once every three months. To help extend the lifespan of the battery, it is recommended that you only fully charge the battery just before driving.

» The High Voltage battery drains over time, and under some conditions, drains faster. When the battery life is shortened, this changes the vehicle's driving distance.

The High Voltage battery life can also be affected by temperature. Parking in extremely hot or cold environments can accelerate battery drain. Extreme high temperatures can affect the battery life. You can minimise the effects by parking the vehicle in the shade during the summer.

If the High Voltage battery is too hot or too cold, it will take longer than usual to charge. Also, driving range is reduced when the temperature is low.

The High Voltage battery's output may be limited if its temperature is too high, such as when driving in situations that require a high power load immediately after charging, or too low due to low ambient temperature.

Output will return to normal once the battery's temperature returns to a normal range. If battery output does not return to normal, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

Battery warming system

When the charging connector is connected to the vehicle and the outside temperature is low, the battery warming system warms the High Voltage battery to maintain starting and driving performance. If the charging connector remains plugged in and the vehicle is not used for a certain period of time, the battery warming system will shut down.

- If the temperature of the High Voltage battery drops to -25 °C or below, the power system and battery warming system will not start. If the High Voltage battery temperature becomes extremely low, wait for the High Voltage battery to warm up as the outside temperature rises, or move your vehicle to a warmer location (via towing or other means).
- The battery warming system does not operate when the 12-volt battery is removed.

Safety Precautions

Attempting to take a High Voltage system component apart or disconnect one of its wires can cause severe electrical shock. Make sure that any maintenance or repairs to the High Voltage system are performed by a Honda dealer.

WARNING

If a severe crash damages your vehicle's High Voltage system, there is a possibility of electrical shock due to exposed High Voltage components or orange wires. If this happens, do not touch any of the High Voltage system components or any of its orange wires.

The High Voltage battery contains a flammable electrolyte that could leak as a result of a severe crash. Avoid skin or eye contact with the electrolyte as it is corrosive. If you accidentally come into contact with the electrolyte, rinse the exposed skin and flush any exposed eyes with copious amounts of water for a few minutes, and seek medical attention immediately.



Use a fire extinguisher for an electrical fire.

Attempting to extinguish an electrical fire with even a small quantity of water, from a garden hose, for instance, can be dangerous.



Any time the vehicle is damaged in a crash, have it repaired by a dealer.

Emergency Shutdown System for the High Voltage System

If the vehicle is involved in a crash, the emergency shutdown system will activate depending on the severity of the impact. When the system activates, the High Voltage system automatically shuts down, and the vehicle can no longer move under its own power. To return the High Voltage system back to normal operation, consult a dealer.

When the vehicle is disposed

Honda collects and recycles High Voltage batteries used in its vehicles – consult a dealer for more information.

Check Before Driving

For Safe Driving

The following pages explain your vehicle's safety features and how to use them properly. The safety precautions below are ones that we consider to be among the most important.

Important Safety Precautions

Some countries prohibit the use of mobile phones other than hands-free devices by the driver while driving.

Always wear your seat belt

A seat belt is your best protection in all types of collisions. Airbags are designed to supplement seat belts, not replace them. So even though your vehicle is equipped with airbags, make sure you and your passengers always wear your seat belts, and wear them properly.

Restrain all children

Children aged 12 and under should ride properly restrained in a back seat, not the front seat. Infants and small children should be restrained in a child restraint system. Larger children should use a booster seat and a lap/shoulder seat belt until they can use the belt properly without a booster seat.

Be aware of airbag hazards

While airbags can save lives, they can cause serious or fatal injuries to occupants who sit too close to them, or are not properly restrained. Infants, young children, and short adults are at the greatest risk. Be sure to follow all instructions and warnings in this manual.

Don't drink and drive

Alcohol and driving don't mix. Even one drink can reduce your ability to respond to changing conditions, and your reaction time gets worse with every additional drink. So don't drink and drive, and don't let your friends drink and drive, either.

Pay appropriate attention to the task of driving safely

Engaging in mobile phone conversation or other activities that keep you from paying close attention to the road, other vehicles, and pedestrians could lead to a crash. Remember, situations can change quickly, and only you can decide when it is safe to divert some attention away from driving.

Control your speed

Excessive speed is a major factor in crash injuries and deaths. Generally, the higher the speed, the greater the risk, but serious injuries can also occur at lower speeds. Never drive faster than is safe for current conditions, regardless of the maximum speed posted.

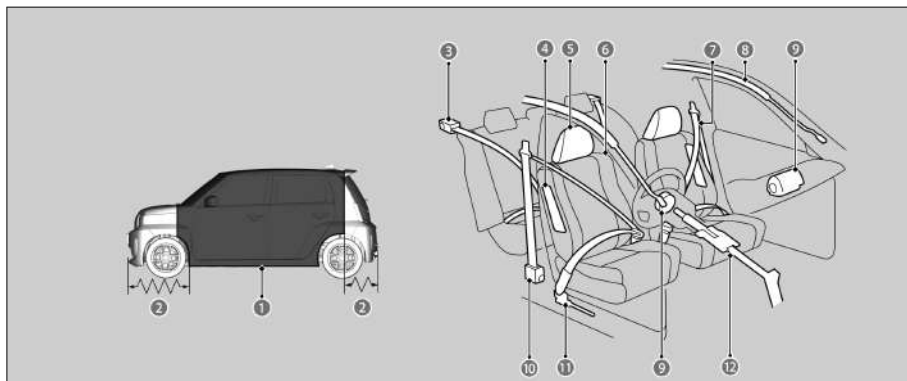
Keep your vehicle in safe condition

Having a tyre blowout or a mechanical failure can be extremely hazardous. To reduce the possibility of such problems, check your tyre pressures and condition frequently, and perform all regularly scheduled maintenance.

Do not leave children unattended in the vehicle

Children, pets, and people needing assistance left unattended in the vehicle may be injured if they activate one or more of the vehicle controls. They may also cause the vehicle to move, resulting in a crash in which they and/or another person(s) can be injured or killed. Also, depending on the ambient temperature, the temperature of the interior may reach extreme levels, which can result in harm or death. Even if the climate control system is on, never leave them in the vehicle unattended as the climate control system can shut off at any time.

Your Vehicle's Safety Features



- 1 Safety Cage**
- 2 Crush Zones**
- 3 Seat Belt Tensioners (Rear Seats)**
- 4 Side Airbags**
- 5 Head Restraints**
- 6 Seats and Seat-Backs**
- 7 Seat Belts**
- 8 Side Curtain Airbags**
- 9 Front Airbags**
- 10 Seat Belt Tensioners (Front Seats)**
- 11 Outer Lap Pretensioners**
- 12 Collapsible Steering Column**

The following checklist will help you take an active role in protecting yourself and your passengers.

Your vehicle is equipped with many features that work together to help to protect you and your passengers during a crash.

Some features do not require any action on your part. These include a strong steel framework that forms a safety cage around the passenger compartment, front and rear crush zones, a collapsible steering column, and tensioners that tighten the front seat belts in a sufficient crash.

However, you and your passengers cannot take full advantage of these features unless you remain seated in the correct position and always wear your seat belts. In fact, some safety features can contribute to injuries if they are not used properly.

Driving Preparation

Exterior Checks

- Make sure there are no people or objects behind or around the vehicle.
 - » There are blind spots from the inside.
 - Make sure the tyres are in good condition.
 - » Check air pressures, and check for damage and excessive wear.
- Q Checking Tyres ▶ P.295**
- Make sure the bonnet is securely closed.
 - » If the bonnet opens while driving, your front view will be blocked.
 - Make sure there are no obstructions on the windows, door mirrors, exterior lights, or other parts of the vehicle.
 - » Remove any frost, snow, or ice.
 - » Remove any snow on the roof, as this can slip down and obstruct your field of vision while driving or fall off and impact other road users. If frozen solid, remove ice once it has softened.
 - » When removing ice from around the wheels, be sure not to damage the wheel or wheel components.
 - Make sure the door is not frozen.
 - » When doors are frozen shut, use warm water around the door edges to melt any ice. Do not try to force them open, as this can damage the rubber trim around the doors. When done, wipe dry to avoid further freezing.
 - Make sure that there are no flammable materials left under the bonnet.
 - » Be especially careful if the vehicle has not been used for a long time, or after maintenance. The heat from the power system and exhaust may cause flammable materials to catch fire, leading to unexpected accidents.
 - Disconnect the charger cable.

Interior Checks



- If the door and/or tailgate open message appears on the driver information interface, a door and/or the tailgate is not completely closed. Close all doors and the tailgate tightly until the message disappears.

- Adjust your seat to a position suitable for driving. Be sure the front seats are adjusted as far to the rear as possible while allowing the driver to control the vehicle. Sitting too close to a front airbag can result in serious or fatal injury in a crash.

 **Adjusting the Front Seat Positions** ▶ P.68

 **Adjusting the Seat** ▶ P.66

- Always wear your seat belt, and make sure you wear it properly. Confirm that any passengers are properly belted as well.

 **Fastening a Seat Belt** ▶ P.75

- Protect children by using seat belts or child restraint systems according to a child's age, height, and weight.

 **Protecting Child Passengers** ▶ P.27

- Do not place anything in the front seat footwells. Make sure to secure the floor mat.
 - » An object or unsecured floor mat can interfere with your brake and accelerator pedal operation while driving.

- Store or secure all items on board properly.
 - » Carrying too much luggage, or improperly storing it, can affect your vehicle's handling, stability, stopping distance, and tyres, and make it unsafe.

- Do not pile items higher than the seatback height.
 - » They can block your view and may be thrown forward in the event of sudden braking.

- Adjust the mirrors and steering wheel properly.
 - » Adjust them while sitting in the proper driving position.

 **Adjusting the Steering Wheel** ▶ P.65

- Be sure items placed on the floor behind the front seats cannot roll under the seats.
 - » They can interfere with the driver's ability to operate the pedals, or the operation of the seats.
- If you have any animals on board, do not let them move around in the vehicle.
 - » They may interfere with driving and a crash could occur.
- Make sure that the indicators in the instrument panel come on when you start the vehicle, and go off soon after.
 - » Always have a dealer check the vehicle if a problem is indicated.

 **Indicator List** ▶ P.260

About Headlight Adjustment

■ Headlight aim

The headlight aim is set by the factory, and does not need to be adjusted. However, if you regularly carry heavy items in the luggage area, have the aim readjusted at a dealer or by a qualified technician.

Low beam headlight angle

You can adjust the low beam headlight angle by yourself.

 Headlight Adjuster ▶ P.121

Headlight distribution

The headlights are suitable for left hand drive and right-hand drive, without the need to make any adjustments or masking, if used temporary. For permanent conversion, please consult with the dealer.

Precautions While Driving

In a Fog

Visibility becomes low when it is foggy. When you drive, turn on the low beam headlights even during the daytime. Slow down, using the road line in the centre, guard rails, and the taillights of the vehicle ahead of you as your driving guide.

In a Strong Wind

If a strong side wind drifts your vehicle while driving, hold the steering wheel tight. Slowly decelerate your vehicle and keep your vehicle in the middle of the road. Be careful with wind gusts especially when your vehicle is exiting a tunnel, driving on a bridge or river bank, and driving through an open area like a quarry, and when a large lorry is passing by.

In Rain

The road is slippery when raining. Avoid hard braking, rapid acceleration, and abrupt steering and be more cautious when driving. It is likely to experience hydroplaning phenomenon if you are driving on a rutted road with puddles.

CAUTION

Slowly decelerate when you increase the deceleration rate with the deceleration paddle selector. If the road is slippery, sudden regenerative braking can cause the tyres to skid.



Do not drive in deep water and on flooded roads.

Driving through deep water will cause damage to the power system and electrical equipment and the vehicle will break down.

Other Precautions

If there is a strong impact with something under the vehicle, stop in a safe location.

Check the underside of the vehicle for damage or any fluid leaks.

The following can damage the under spoiler, under covers, front bumper, rear diffuser, and side sill:

- Parking the vehicle by a parking block
- Parallel parking along the road shoulder
- Driving towards the bottom of a hill
- Driving up or down to a different surface level (such as a road shoulder)
- Driving on a rutted or bumpy road
- Driving on a road with potholes.
- Driving over speed bump.

If you repeatedly turn the steering wheel at an extremely low speed, or hold the steering wheel in the full left or right position for a while, the electric power steering (EPS) system heats up, causing the system to go into a protective mode and make the steering wheel progressively harder to operate.

» Once the system cools down, the EPS system is restored.

» Repeated operation under these conditions can eventually damage the system.

Modifications and Accessories

Modifications

- Do not modify your vehicle in a manner that may affect its handling, stability, or reliability, or install non-Genuine Honda parts or accessories that may have a similar effect.
- Even minor modifications to vehicle systems can affect overall vehicle performance.
- Always make sure all equipment is properly installed and maintained, and do not make any modification to your vehicle or its systems that might cause your vehicle to no longer meet your country's or local regulations.
- The on-board diagnostic port (OBD-II/SAE J1962 connector) installed on this vehicle is intended to be used with automobile system diagnostic devices or with other devices that Honda has approved. Use of any other type of device may adversely affect the vehicle's electronic systems or allow them to be compromised, possibly resulting in a system malfunction, a drained 12-volt battery, or other unexpected problems.

- Do not modify or attempt to repair your vehicle's high voltage power system or otherwise modify vehicle electrical systems. Disassembling or modifying electrical equipment can result in a crash or a fire.

If you ever need to replace your vehicle's High Voltage battery assembly outside of warranty coverage, we highly recommend that you only use a genuine Honda High Voltage battery assembly. Genuine Honda High Voltage battery assemblies are designed to work with your vehicle's power system and have been designed, engineered, and manufactured to avoid overcharging situations. Non-genuine High Voltage battery assemblies may not have been similarly designed, engineered, and manufactured, and installation of such assemblies could result in overcharging, fires, loss of power, or other conditions that may increase the likelihood of a crash or injury.

WARNING

Improper accessories or modifications can affect your vehicle's handling, stability, performance, and cause a crash in which you can be seriously hurt or killed.

Follow all instructions in this owner's manual regarding accessories and modifications.

WARNING

Use of improperly designed, engineered or manufactured High Voltage battery assemblies could cause a fire in your vehicle.

A vehicle fire could result in a crash or injury.

Only use a genuine Honda High Voltage battery assembly, or its equivalent, in your vehicle.



Honda Genuine Accessories are recommended to ensure proper operation of your vehicle.

Accessories

When installing accessories, check the following:

- Do not install accessories on the windscreen. They can obstruct your view and delay your reaction to driving conditions.

- Do not install any items other than Honda Genuine Accessories designated for your vehicle over areas containing airbags.
Items other than Honda Genuine Accessories designated for your vehicle installed in these areas may interfere with proper operation of the vehicle's airbags or may be propelled into you or another occupant if the airbags deploy.
- Be sure electronic accessories do not overload electrical circuits or interfere with proper operation of your vehicle.

Checking Fuses ▶ P.334

- Before installing any electronic accessory, have the installer contact a dealer for assistance. If possible, have a dealer inspect the final installation.

When properly installed, mobile phones, alarms, two-way radios, radio antennas, and low-powered audio systems should not interfere with your vehicle's computer controlled systems, such as your airbags and anti-lock brakes.

If any Honda Genuine Accessories become inoperable, refer to the separate accessory owner's manual (if applicable) or consult a dealer for assistance to troubleshoot the potential faulty condition.

Child Safety

Protecting Child Passengers

Each year, many children are injured or killed in vehicle crashes because they are either unrestrained or not properly restrained. In fact, vehicle crashes are the number one cause of death of children aged 12 and under.

To reduce the number of child deaths and injuries, infants and children should be properly restrained when they ride in a vehicle.

Children should sit properly restrained in a rear seat. This is because:

- An inflating front airbag can injure or kill a child sitting in the front seat.
- A child in the front seat is more likely to interfere with the driver's ability to safely control the vehicle.
- Statistics show that children of all sizes and ages are safer when they are properly restrained in a rear seat.



- Never hold a child on your lap because it is impossible to protect them in the event of a collision.
- Never put a seat belt over yourself and a child. During a crash, the belt would likely press deep into the child and cause serious or fatal injuries.
- Never let two children use the same seat belt. Both children could be very seriously injured in a crash.
- Any child who is too small to wear a seat belt must be properly restrained in an approved child restraint system that is properly secured to the vehicle using the seat belt or the child restraint anchorage system.
- Do not allow children to operate the doors, windows, or seat adjustments.
- Do not leave children in the vehicle unattended, especially in hot weather when the inside of the vehicle can get hot enough to kill them. They could also activate vehicle controls causing it to move unexpectedly.

In many countries, the law requires all children aged 12 and under, and whose height are shorter than 150 cm (60 inches) be properly restrained in a rear seat.

In many countries, it is required to use an officially approved and suitable child restraint system for transporting a child on any passenger seat. Check your local legal requirement.

We recommend a child restraint system compliant with UN Regulation No. 44 or No. 129, or the regulations of the subject countries.

To remind you of the passenger's front airbag hazard and child safety, your vehicle has the warning label on the passenger's side sun visor.

Please read and follow the instructions on this label.

 WARNING	
Front Passenger's Sun Visor	NEVER use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an ACTIVE AIRBAG in front of it, DEATH or SERIOUS INJURY to the CHILD can occur.
	

 WARNING
Children who are unrestrained or improperly restrained can be seriously injured or killed in a crash. Any child too small for a seat belt should be properly restrained in an approved child restraint system. A larger child should be properly restrained with a seat belt, using a booster seat if necessary.

WARNING: Use the power window lock button to prevent children from opening the windows. Using this feature will prevent children from playing with the windows, which could expose them to hazards or distract the driver.

 Opening/Closing the Power Windows ► P.81

WARNING: Always take the ignition key with you whenever you leave the vehicle alone or with other occupants.

Safety of Infants and Small Children

Protecting Infants

An infant must be properly restrained in a rear-facing child restraint system until the infant reaches the child restraint system manufacturer's weight or height limit for the seat.

Positioning a rear-facing child restraint system



Child restraint system must be placed and secured in a rear seating position.

- » We recommend that you install the child restraint system directly behind the front passenger's seat, move the seat as far forward as needed, and leave it unoccupied.
- » Make sure that there is no contact between the child restraint system and the seat in front of it. If there is, you may wish to get a smaller rear-facing child restraint system.

Many experts recommend use of a rear-facing child restraint system for a child up to two years old if the child's height and weight are appropriate for a rear-facing child restraint system.

Rear-facing child restraint systems should never be installed in a front-facing position.

Always refer to the child restraint system manufacturer's instructions before installation.

If the passenger's front airbag inflates, it can hit the rear-facing child restraint system with great force, which can dislodge or strike the system, and seriously injure the child.

When properly installed, a rear-facing child restraint system may prevent the driver or a front passenger from moving their seat all the way back, or from locking their seat-back in the desired position.

WARNING

Placing a rear-facing child restraint system in the front seat can result in serious injury or death if the passenger's front airbag inflates.

Always place a rear-facing child restraint system in the back seat, not the front.

Protecting Smaller Children

If a child has exceeded the weight and height limitations of a rear-facing child restraint system, the child should be properly restrained in a firmly secured front-facing child restraint system until they exceed the weight and height limitations for the front-facing child restraint system.

Educate yourself about the laws and regulations regarding child restraint system use where you are driving, and follow the child restraint system manufacturer's instructions.

■ Front-facing child restraint system placement



We strongly recommend placing a front-facing child restraint system in a rear seating position.

Placing a front-facing child restraint system in the front seat can be hazardous. A rear seat is the safest place for a child.

⚠ WARNING

Placing a front-facing child restraint system in the front seat can result in serious injury or death if the front airbag inflates.

If you must place a front-facing child restraint system in front, move the vehicle seat as far back as possible, and properly restrain the child.

Selecting a Child Restraint System

Some child restraint systems are lower anchorage compatible. Some have a rigid-type connector while others have a flexible-type connector. Both are equally easy to use. Some existing and previously owned child restraint systems can only be installed using the seat belt. Whichever type you choose, follow the child restraint system manufacturer's use and care instructions including recommended expiration dates as well as the instructions in this manual. Proper installation is key to maximising your child's safety.

In seating positions and vehicles not equipped with lower anchorages, install a child restraint system using the seat belt and a top tether for added security. This is because all child restraint systems must be secured with the seat belt when the lower anchorage system is not in use. In addition, the child restraint system manufacturer may advise that a seat belt be used to attach an ISOFIX restraint system once a child reaches a specified weight. Please read the child restraint system owner's manual for proper installation instructions.

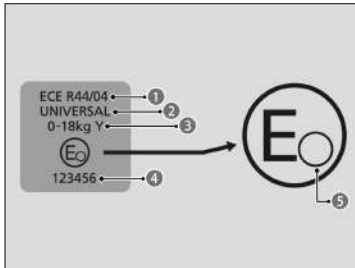
Important consideration when selecting a child restraint system

- The child restraint system is the correct type and size for the child.
- The child restraint system is the correct type for the seating position.
- The child restraint system is compliant with safety standards. We recommend a child restraint system compliant with UN Regulation No. 44 or No. 129, or the regulations of the subject countries. Look for the approval mark on the system and the manufacturer's statement of compliance on the box.

! Child Restraint System that have been complied with UN Regulation has the approval label.

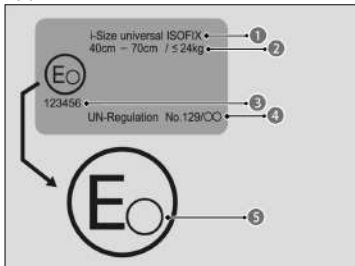
Check the approval label on the Child Restraint System.

Example of UN Regulation No. 44 approval label



- 1 Regulation number
- 2 Category
- 3 "Mass group"
- 4 Approval number
- 5 Country code

Example of UN Regulation No. 129 approval label

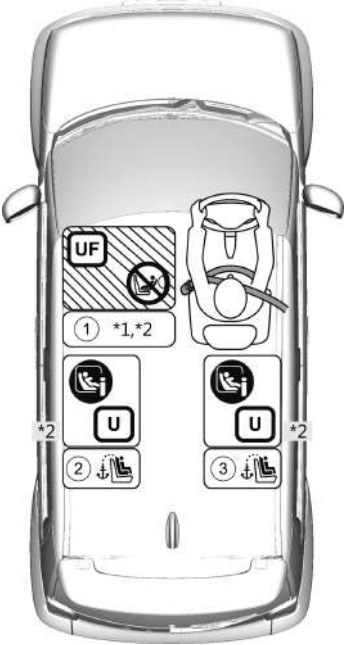


- 1 Category
- 2 Size and weight indication
- 3 Approval number
- 4 Regulation number
- 5 Country code

Lower anchorage-compatible child restraint systems have been developed to simplify the installation process and reduce the likelihood of injuries caused by incorrect installation.

The Recommended Child Restraint Systems

Locations for Child Restraint System Installation



	Suitable for universal restraint systems installed with vehicle safety belts.
	Suitable for forward facing universal restraint systems installed with vehicle safety belts.
	Suitable for i-Size and ISOFIX child restraints systems.
	Suitable for forward facing restraint systems only.
	Never use a rearward facing child restraint system.
	Seat position equipped with Top Tether anchorages.

*1: Adjust the seat slide to the rearmost position.

*2: For installing the universal belted type, adjust the seat back to the most front lock position.

Child restraint systems with support legs can be installed on non i-Size seating positions.

	Size groups Weight Stature		Seating position and Seat position number		
			①	②	③
			Front passenger*1	2nd row	
				Left	Right
Seating position suitable for universal belted (yes/no)	Group 0	Up to 10kg	No	Yes*2	Yes*2
	Group 0+	Up to 13kg			
	Group I	9–18kg	Yes*2	Yes*2	Yes*2
	Group II	15–25kg			
	Group III	22–36kg			
i-Size seating position (yes/no)	Up to 150cm		No	Yes	Yes
Seating position suitable for recommended genuine CRS*3	Refer to genuine CRS list		Yes	Yes	Yes
Seating position suitable for lateral fixture (L1/L2)	—		No	No	No
Largest suitable rearward facing fixture (R1/R2X/R2/R3)	Group 0	Up to 10kg	No	R3	R3
	Group 0+	Up to 13kg			
	Group I	9–18kg			
Largest suitable forward facing fixture (F2X/F2/F3)	Group I	9–18kg	No	F3	F3
Largest suitable booster fixture (B2/B3)	Up to 150cm		B3	B3	B3

*1: Adjust the seat slide to the rearmost position. Forward facing only.

*2: For installing the universal belted type, adjust the seat back to the most front lock position.

Child restraint systems with support legs can be installed on non i-Size seating positions.

*3: The named Child Restraint Systems (CRS) reflect Honda's recommendations at the date of publication. You should speak to an authorised dealer for up to date details relating to our recommended CRSs. Other CRS may also be suitable - please consult CRS manufacturers for recommended vehicle lists.

Genuine CRS List

Range of application	Child Restraint System	Category
40cm to 83cm up to 13kg (Birth - 15 months)	Honda baby safe	Universal Belted
	Honda baby safe ISOFIX	i-Size universal ISOFIX
76cm to 105cm 9kg to 22kg (15 months - 4 years)	Honda ISOFIX	i-Size Universal ISOFIX
100cm to 150cm 15kg to 36kg (3.5 years - 12 years)	Honda KIDFIX	i-Size Booster seat

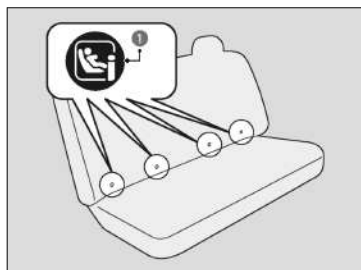
When purchasing a child restraint systems, make sure to check the ISOFIX size class or the fixture to ensure that the seat is compatible with your vehicle.

Fixture (CRF)	Description
ISO/L1	Left lateral-facing (carrycot) infant seat
ISO/L2	Right lateral-facing (carrycot) infant seat
ISO/R1	Rearward-facing infant seat
ISO/R2X	Reduced-size rearward-facing child restraint systems
ISO/R2	Reduced-size rearward-facing child restraint systems
ISO/R3	Full-size rearward-facing child restraint systems
ISO/F2X	Reduced-height forward-facing child restraint systems
ISO/F2	Reduced-height forward-facing child restraint systems
ISO/F3	Full-height, forward-facing child restraint systems
ISO/B2	Reduced width forward-facing booster seat
ISO/B3	Full width forward-facing booster seat

Installing a Child Restraint System

Installing a Lower Anchorage-Compatible Child Restraint System

A lower anchorage-compatible child restraint system can be installed in either of the two outer rear seats. A child restraint system is attached to the lower anchorages with either the rigid or flexible type of connectors.



1 Marks



1 Rigid Type

2 Lower Anchorages



1 Flexible Type

2 Lower Anchorages

- [1] Locate the lower anchorages under the marks.
- [2] Make sure to lock the seat-back in the upright position.

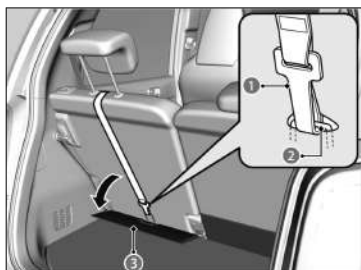
Q Adjusting the Rear Seat Positions ▶ P.69

- [3] Place the child restraint system on the vehicle seat, then attach the child restraint system to the lower anchorages according to the instructions that came with the child restraint system.
 - » When installing the child restraint system, make sure that the lower anchorages are not obstructed by the seat belt or any other object.
 - » Install the child restraint system so that the gap between it and the seat-back is as small as possible.



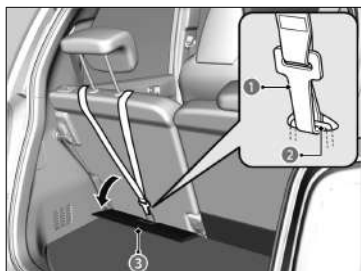
1 Top Tether Anchorage Symbol

▼ Straight top tether type



- 1 Tether Strap Hook**
- 2 Anchorage**
- 3 Cover**

▼ Other top tether type



- 1 Tether Strap Hook**
- 2 Anchorage**
- 3 Cover**

▼ Straight top tether type

- [4] Raise the head restraint to its highest position, then route the tether strap between the head restraint legs. Make sure the strap is not twisted.

▼ Other top tether type

- [4] Raise the head restraint to its highest position, then route the tether strap outside the head restraint legs. Make sure the strap is not twisted.

▼ All types

- [5] Secure the tether strap hook to the anchorage with the cover open.
- [6] Tighten the tether strap as instructed by the child restraint system manufacturer.
- [7] Make sure the child restraint system is firmly secured by rocking it forward and back, and side to side, little movement should be felt.

WARNING: Never use a hook that does not come with a Top Tether Anchorage Symbol when securing an installed child restraint system.

▼ Child restraint system with support leg

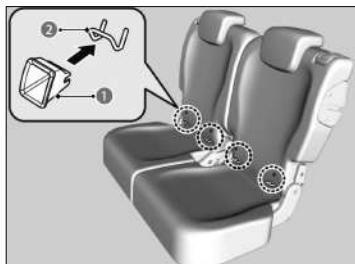


1 Support Leg

[4] Extend the support leg until it touches the floor as instructed by the child restraint system manufacturer.

- » Confirm that the section of the floor on which the support leg rests is level. If the section is not level, the support leg will not provide adequate support.
- » Make sure that there is no contact between the child restraint system and the seat in front of it.

[5] Make sure the child restraint system is firmly secured by rocking it forward and back, and side to side; little movement should be felt.



1 Guide-cup 2 Lower Anchorage

Some child restraint systems come with optional guide-cups, which avoid possible damage to the seat surface. Follow the manufacturer's instructions when using the guide-cups, and attach them to the lower anchorages as shown in the image.

For your child's safety, when using a child restraint system installed using the lower anchorage system, make sure that the child restraint system is properly secured to the vehicle.

A child restraint system that is not properly secured will not adequately protect a child in a crash and may cause injury to the child or other vehicle occupants. The flexible type may not be available in your country.

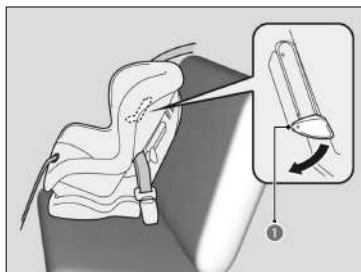
⚠ WARNING

Never attach two child restraint systems to the same anchorage. In a collision, one anchorage may not be strong enough to hold two child restraint system attachments and may break, causing serious injury or death.

Installing a Child Restraint System with a Lap/Shoulder Seat Belt

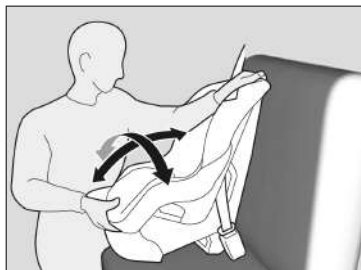


- [1] Place the child restraint system on the vehicle seat.
- [2] Route the seat belt through the child restraint system according to the child restraint system manufacturer's instructions, and insert the latch plate into the buckle.
 - » Insert the latch plate fully until it clicks.

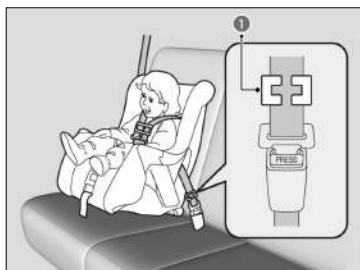


1 Tab

- [3] Push down the tab. Route the shoulder part of the belt into the slit at the side of the restraint.
- [4] Grab the shoulder part of the belt near the buckle, and pull up to remove any slack from the lap part of the belt.
 - » When doing this, place your weight on the child restraint system and push it into the vehicle seat.
- [5] Position the belt properly and push up the tab. Make sure the belt is not twisted.
 - » When pushing up the tab, pull up the upper shoulder part of the belt to remove any slack from the belt.



- [6] Make sure the child restraint system is firmly secured by rocking it forward and back, and side to side; little movement should be felt.
- [7] Make sure any unused seat belt that a child can reach is buckled.



1 Locking Clip

If your child restraint system does not come with a mechanism that secures the belt, install a locking clip on the seat belt.

After going through the step 1 and 2, pull up the shoulder part of the belt and make sure there is no slack in the lap portion.

- [3] Tightly grasp the belt near the latch plate. Pinch both parts of the belt together so they do not slip through the latch plate. Unbuckle the seat belt.
- [4] Install the locking clip as shown in the image. Position the clip as close as possible to the latch plate.
- [5] Insert the latch plate into the buckle. Go to step 6 and 7.

A child restraint system that is not properly secured will not adequately protect a child in a crash and may cause injury to the child or other vehicle occupants.

Adding Security with a Tether



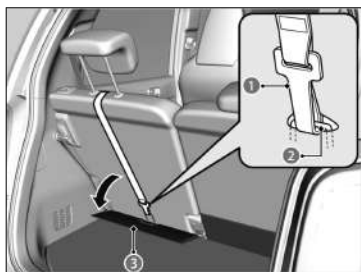
1 Tether Anchorage Points

A tether anchorage point is provided behind each rear seating position.

If you have a child restraint system that comes with a tether but can be installed with a seat belt, the tether may be used for additional security.

Always use a tether for front-facing child restraint systems whether using the seat belt or lower anchorages.

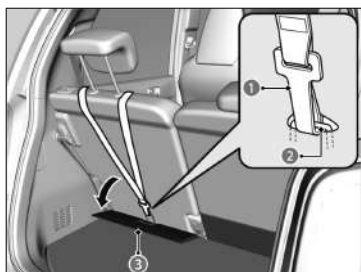
WARNING: Child restraint anchorages are designed to withstand only those loads imposed by correctly fitted child restraints. Under no circumstances are they to be used for adult seat belts, harnesses or for attaching other items or equipment to the vehicle.



- 1** Tether Strap Hook
- 2** Anchorage
- 3** Cover

▼ Straight top tether type

- [1] Raise the head restraint to its highest position, then route the tether strap between the head restraint legs. Make sure the strap is not twisted.



- 1** Tether Strap Hook
- 2** Anchorage
- 3** Cover

▼ Other top tether type

- [1] Raise the head restraint to its highest position, then route the tether strap outside the head restraint legs. Make sure the strap is not twisted.

▼ All types

- [2] Secure the tether strap hook to the anchorage with the cover open.
- [3] Tighten the tether strap as instructed by the child restraint system manufacturer.
- [4] Make sure the child restraint system is firmly secured by rocking it forward and back, and side to side, little movement should be felt.

Safety of Larger Children

Protecting Larger Children

The following pages give instructions on how to check proper seat belt fit, what kind of booster seat to use if one is needed, and important precautions for a child who must sit in front.

Checking Seat Belt Fit

When a child is too big for a child restraint system, secure the child in a rear seat using the lap/shoulder seat belt. Have the child sit upright and all the way back, then answer the following questions.

Checklist



- Do the child's knees bend comfortably over the edge of the seat?
- Does the shoulder belt cross between the child's neck and arm?
- Is the lap part of the seat belt as low as possible, touching the child's thighs?
- Will the child be able to stay seated like this for the whole trip?

If you answer yes to all these questions, the child is ready to wear the lap/shoulder seat belt correctly. If you answer no to any question, the child needs to ride on a booster seat until the seat belt fits properly without a booster seat.

Booster Seats



If a lap/shoulder seat belt cannot be used properly, position the child in a booster seat in the rear seat. For the child's safety, check that the child meets the booster seat manufacturer's recommendations.



A backrest is available for a specific booster seat. Install the backrest to the booster seat and adjust it to the vehicle seat according to the booster seat manufacturer's instructions. Make sure the seat belt is properly routed through the guide at the shoulder of the backrest and the belt does not touch and cross the child's neck.

1 Guide

- When installing a booster seat, make sure to read the instructions that came with it, and install the seat accordingly. There are high- and low-type booster seats. Choose a booster seat that allows the child to wear the seat belt correctly.

We recommend a booster seat with a backrest as it is easier to adjust the shoulder belt.

Protecting Larger Children - Final Checks

Your vehicle has a rear seat where children can be properly restrained. If you ever have to carry a group of children, and a child must ride in front:

- Make sure you read and fully understand the instructions and safety information in this manual.
- Move the front passenger seat as far back as possible.
- Have the child sit upright and well back in the seat.
- Check that the seat belt is properly positioned so that the child is secure in the seat.

Monitoring child passengers

We strongly recommend that you keep an eye on child passengers. Even older, more mature children sometimes need to be reminded to fasten their seat belts and sit up properly.

WARNING

Allowing a child aged 12 or under to sit in front can result in injury or death if the passenger's front airbag inflates.

If a larger child must ride in front, move the vehicle seat as far to the rear as possible, have the child sit up properly and wear the seat belt properly, and use a booster seat if needed.

Airbags

About Your Airbags

Your vehicle is equipped with three types of airbags:

- Front airbags: Airbags in front of the driver's and front passenger's seats.
- Side airbags: Airbags in the driver's and front passenger's seat-backs.
- Side curtain airbags: Airbags above the side windows.

Each is discussed in the following pages.

The airbags can inflate whenever the power mode is in ON.

After an airbag inflates in a crash, you may see a small amount of smoke. This is from the combustion process of the inflator material and is not harmful. People with respiratory problems may experience some temporary discomfort. If this occurs, get out of the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.

Airbag System Components

The front, side, and side curtain airbags are deployed according to the direction and severity of impact. The airbag system includes:

- Two SRS (Supplemental Restraint System) front airbags. The driver's airbag is stored in the centre of the steering wheel; the front passenger's airbag is stored in the dashboard. Both are marked **SRS AIRBAG**.
- Two side airbags. One for the driver and one for the front passenger. The airbags are stored in the outer edges of the seat-backs. Both are marked **SIDE AIRBAG**.
- Two side curtain airbags, one for each side of the vehicle. The airbags are stored in the ceiling, above the side windows. The front and rear pillars are marked **SIDE CURTAIN AIRBAG**.
- An electronic control unit that, when the power mode is in ON, continually monitors information about the various impact sensors, seat and buckle sensors, airbag activators, seat belt tensioners, and other vehicle information. During a crash event, the unit can record such information.
- Seat belt tensioners for the front seats and outer rear seats.
- Impact sensors that can detect a moderate-to-severe front or side impact.
- An indicator on the instrument panel that alerts you to a possible problem with your airbag system or seat belt tensioners.

Pressure sensors that can detect a moderate-to-severe side impact.

Important Facts About Your Airbags

Airbags can pose serious hazards. To do their job, airbags must inflate with tremendous force. So, while airbags help to save lives, they can cause burns, bruises, and other minor injuries, sometimes even fatal ones if occupants are not wearing their seat belts properly and sitting correctly.

What you should do: Always wear your seat belt properly and sit upright and as far back from the steering wheel as possible while allowing full control of the vehicle. A front passenger should move their seat as far back from the dashboard as possible. Remember, however, that no safety system can prevent all injuries or deaths that can occur in a severe crash, even when seat belts are properly worn and the airbags deploy.

Do not place hard or sharp objects between yourself and a front airbag. Carrying hard or sharp objects on your lap, or driving with a pipe or other sharp object in your mouth, can result in injuries if your front airbag inflates.

Do not attach or place objects on the front airbag covers. Objects on the covers marked **SRS AIRBAG** could interfere with the proper operation of the airbags or be propelled inside the vehicle and hurt someone if the airbags inflate.

Do not attempt to deactivate your airbags. Together, airbags and seat belts provide the best protection.

When driving, keep hands and arms out of the deployment path of the front airbag by holding each side of the steering wheel. Do not cross an arm over the airbag cover.

Front Airbags (SRS)

SRS (Supplemental Restraint System) indicates that the airbags are designed to supplement seat belts, not replace them. Seat belts are the occupant's primary restraint system.

The front SRS airbags inflate in a moderate-to-severe frontal collision to help to protect the head and chest of the driver and/or front passenger.

Housing Locations

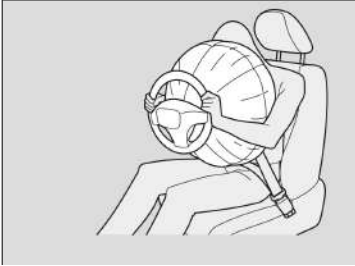
The front airbags are housed in the centre of the steering wheel for the driver, and in the dashboard for the front passenger. Both airbags are marked **SRS AIRBAG**.

Operation

Front airbags are designed to inflate during moderate-to-severe frontal collisions. When the vehicle decelerates suddenly, the sensors send information to the control unit which signals one or both front airbags to inflate.

A frontal collision can be either head-on or angled between two vehicles, or when a vehicle crashes into a stationary object, such as a concrete wall.

How the Front Airbags Work



While your seat belt restrains your torso, the front airbag provides supplemental protection for your head and chest.

The front airbags deflate immediately so that they won't interfere with the driver's visibility or the ability to steer or operate other controls.

The total time for inflation and deflation is so fast that most occupants are not aware that the airbags deployed until they see them lying in front of them.

■ When front airbags should not deploy

Minor frontal crashes: Front airbags were designed to supplement seat belts and help to save lives, not to prevent minor scrapes, or even broken bones that might occur during a less than moderate-to-severe frontal crash.

Side impacts: Front airbags can provide protection when a sudden deceleration causes a driver or front passenger to move towards the front of the vehicle. Side airbags and side curtain airbags have been specifically designed to help to reduce the severity of injuries that can occur during a moderate-to-severe side impact which can cause the driver or passenger to move towards the side of the vehicle.

Rear impacts: Head restraints and seat belts are your best protection during a rear impact. Front airbags cannot provide any significant protection and are not designed to deploy in such collisions.

Rollovers: Seat belts and side curtain airbags offer the best protection in a rollover. Because front airbags could provide little if any protection, they are not designed to deploy during a rollover.

■ When front airbags deploy with little or no visible damage

Because the airbag system senses sudden deceleration, a strong impact to the vehicle framework or suspension might cause one or more of the airbags to deploy. Examples include running into a curb, the edge of a hole, or other low fixed object that causes a sudden deceleration in the vehicle chassis. Since the impact is underneath the vehicle, damage may not be readily apparent.

■ When front airbags may not deploy, even though exterior damage appears severe

Since crushable body parts absorb crash energy during an impact, the amount of visible damage does not always indicate proper airbag operation. In fact, some collisions can result in severe damage but no airbag deployment because the airbags would not have been needed or would not have provided protection even if they had deployed.

Side Airbags

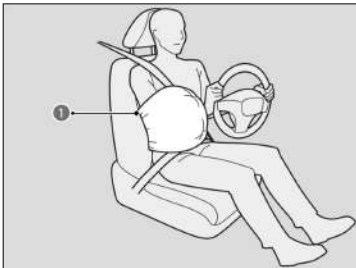
The side airbags help to protect the torso and pelvis of the driver or a front passenger during a moderate-to-severe side impact.

Housing Locations

The side airbags are housed in the outside edge of the driver's and passenger's seat-backs.

Both are marked **SIDE AIRBAG**.

Operation



When the sensors detect a moderate-to-severe side impact, the control unit signals the side airbag on the impact side to immediately inflate.

1 Side Airbag

■ When a side airbag deploys with little or no visible damage

Because the airbag system senses sudden acceleration, a strong impact to the side of the vehicle's framework can cause a side airbag to deploy. In such cases, there may be little or no damage, but the side impact sensors detected a severe enough impact to deploy the airbag.

■ When a side airbag may not deploy, even though visible damage appears severe

It is possible for a side airbag not to deploy during an impact that results in apparently severe damage. This can occur when the point of impact was towards the far front or rear of the vehicle, or when the vehicle's crushable body parts absorbed most of the crash energy. In either case, the side airbag would not have been needed nor provided protection even if it had deployed.

- ❗ Do not cover or replace the front seat-back covers without consulting a dealer.

Improperly replacing or covering front seat-back covers can prevent your side airbags from properly deploying during a side impact.

- ❗ Do not let the front passenger lean sideways with their head in the deployment path of the side airbag.

An inflating side airbag can strike with strong force and seriously injure the passenger.

- ❗ Do not attach accessories on or near the side airbags. They can interfere with the proper operation of the airbags, or hurt someone if an airbag inflates.

- ❗ Side airbag deployment is controlled by a pressure sensor inside each front door. Damage or changes to the inside or outside of the doors may negatively affect side airbag deployment. Contact an authorised dealer before changing or repairing a front door.

Side Curtain Airbags

The side curtain airbags help to protect the heads of the driver and any passengers during a moderate-to-severe side impact.

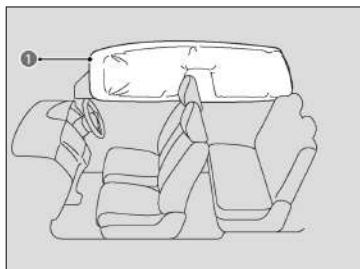
- ❗ Do not attach any objects to the side windows or roof pillars as they can interfere with the proper operation of the side curtain airbags.

! The side curtain airbags are most effective when an occupant is wearing their seat belt properly and sitting upright, well back in their seat.

Housing Locations

The side curtain airbags are located in the ceiling above the side windows on both sides of the vehicle.

Operation



The side curtain airbag is designed to deploy in a moderate-to-severe side impact.

1 Side Curtain Airbag

When side curtain airbags deploy in a frontal collision

One or both side curtain airbags may also inflate in a moderate-to-severe angled frontal collision.

Airbag System Indicators

If a problem occurs in the airbag system, the SRS indicator will come on and a message appears on the driver information interface.

Supplemental Restraint System (SRS) Indicator



- When the power mode is set to ON

The indicator comes on for a few seconds, then goes off. This tells you the system is working properly.

If the indicator comes on at any other time, or does not come on at all, have the system checked by a dealer as soon as possible.

If you don't, your airbags and seat belt tensioners may not work properly when they are needed.

WARNING

Ignoring the SRS indicator can result in serious injury or death if the airbag systems or tensioners do not work properly.

Have your vehicle checked by a dealer as soon as possible if the SRS indicator alerts you to a possible problem.

Airbag Care

You do not need to, and should not, perform any maintenance on or replace any airbag system components yourself. However, you should have your vehicle inspected by a dealer in the following situations:

- ❗ The removal of airbag components from the vehicle is prohibited. In case of malfunction, or shutdown, or after the airbag inflation/seat belt tensioner operation, ask a qualified personnel for handling.

When the Airbags Have Deployed

If an airbag has inflated, the control unit and other related parts must be replaced. Similarly, once an automatic seat belt tensioner has been activated, it must be replaced.



We recommend against the use of salvaged airbag system components, including the airbag, tensioners, sensors, and control unit.

When the Vehicle Has Been in a Moderate-to-Severe Collision

Even if the airbags did not inflate, have your dealer inspect the following: the seat belt tensioners for the front seats and outer rear seats, and each seat belt that was worn during the crash.

Post-Collision Braking System

About the Post-Collision Braking System

When the airbag system is activated after a collision is detected, this system simultaneously applies the brakes and limits propulsion to reduce damage from a secondary collision.

This system may not be able to reduce damage from secondary collisions in all situations.

Its effectiveness depends on the circumstances of the collision.

When a collision occurs, confirm your surroundings, and carefully operate your vehicle as needed to park in a safe place.

Conditions for activation

The Post-Collision Braking System activates when the airbag system or automatic seat belt tensioners activate due to a frontal collision or side impact.

However, it will not activate if components of the system are damaged.

Conditions for cancellation

After the Post-Collision Braking System is activated, the system will be cancelled if either of the following conditions is met.

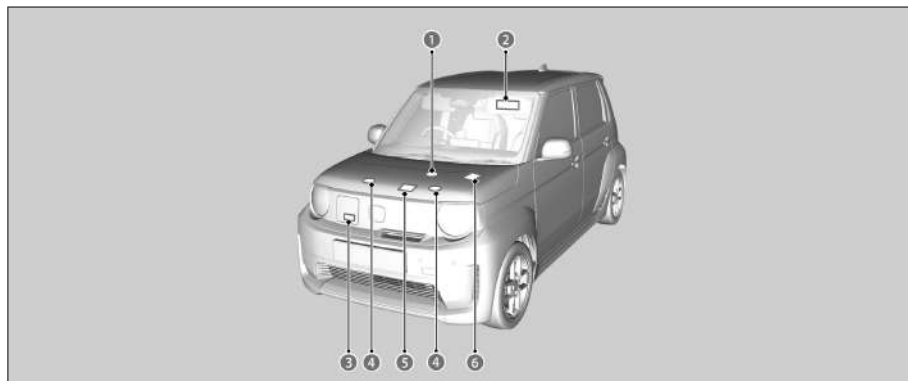
- The vehicle is stopped.
- You depress the accelerator pedal after releasing it.

Safety Labels

Label Locations

These labels are in the locations shown. They warn you of potential hazards that can cause serious injury or death. Read these labels carefully.

If a label comes off or becomes hard to read, contact a dealer for a replacement.



1 Climate Control Coolant Reserve Tank

[About the Electric Vehicle](#) ▶ P.12

2 Protecting Child Passenger

[Protecting Child Passengers](#) ▶ P.27

3 Charging Information Label

[About the Electric Vehicle](#) ▶ P.12

4 High Voltage System Coolant Tank

[About the Electric Vehicle](#) ▶ P.12

5 Air Conditioner

[Air Conditioning](#) ▶ P.305

6 12-volt Battery

[12-Volt Battery Label](#) ▶ P.304

Key

Details on the Key

Use the keys to turn on and off the power system, and lock and unlock all the doors, tailgate, and charge lid.

Low Keyless Remote Signal Strength

The vehicle transmits radio waves to locate the keyless remote to activate the power system; lock and unlock all the doors, tailgate, and charge lid.

In the following cases, activating the power system, locking/unlocking the doors, tailgate, and charge lid may be inhibited, or operation may be unstable:

- Strong radio waves are being transmitted from nearby devices such as quick chargers.
- You are carrying the keyless remote together with telecommunications equipment, laptop computers, mobile phones, or wireless devices.
- A metallic object is touching or covering the keyless remote.

Battery life is about two years, but this varies depending on regularity of use.

Communication between the keyless remote and the vehicle consumes the keyless remote's battery.

- It is possible to reduce battery consumption by turning off radio wave reception. When you hold down the lock and unlock buttons at the same time for approximately three seconds, the LED will blink twice and radio wave reception will turn off. If you press any button on the keyless remote once, it will begin receiving radio waves again.



Follow the advice below to prevent damage to the keys:

- Do not leave the keys in direct sunlight, or in locations with high temperature or high humidity.
- Do not drop the keys or set heavy objects on them.
- Keep the keys away from liquids, dust, and sand.
- Do not take the keys apart except to replace the battery.



Do not leave the keyless remote in the vehicle when you get out. Carry it with you.



The keyless access system will not lock the vehicle when a door or the tailgate is open.



The battery is consumed whenever the keyless remote is receiving strong radio waves. Avoid placing it near electrical appliances such as televisions and personal computers.

Keyless Remote Reminder

■ When the power mode is in ON

If you remove the keyless remote from the vehicle and shut the door, a warning indicator will display in the instrument panel, and warning buzzers will sound from both inside and outside the vehicle.

■ When the power mode is in ACCESSORY

If you remove the keyless remote from the vehicle and shut the door, a warning buzzer will sound from outside the vehicle.

- Do not put the keyless remote on the dashboard or in the glove box. It may cause the warning buzzer to sound.
- Under some other conditions that can prevent the vehicle from locating the remote, the warning buzzer may also sound even if the remote is within the system's operational range.
- If the keyless remote is taken out of the vehicle after the power system has been turned on, you can no longer change the **POWER** button mode or restart the power system. Always make sure that the keyless remote is in your vehicle when you operate the **POWER** button.
- Removing the keyless remote from the vehicle through a window does not activate the warning buzzer.

■ Stopping the warning buzzer

When the keyless remote is within the system's operational range and the driver's door is closed, the warning function cancels.

» If the alarm continues to sound, place the keyless remote in another location.

Immobilizer System

This system prevents a key that has not been pre-registered from starting the power system.

Pay attention to the following:

1 Before Driving > Key

- Do not allow objects that emit strong radio waves near the **POWER** button.
- Make sure the key is not covered by or touching a metal object.
- Do not bring a key from another vehicle's immobilizer system near the **POWER** button.
- Do not put the key near magnetic items. Electronic devices, such as televisions and audio systems, emit strong magnetic fields. Note that even a key chain can become magnetic.



The immobilizer system indicator will blink in the instrument panel if the immobilizer system cannot recognise the key information when you have pressed **POWER** button.

1 Immobilizer System Indicator

Do not alter the system or add other devices to it. Doing so may damage the system and make your vehicle inoperable.

If the system repeatedly does not recognise the coding of your key, contact a dealer.

If you have lost your key and cannot start your vehicle, contact a dealer.

Apply and hold the brake pedal before turning the vehicle on the first time after the 12-volt battery has been disconnected.



Leaving the key in the vehicle can result in theft or accidental movement of the vehicle. Always take the key with you whenever you leave the vehicle unattended.

Security System Alarm

The security system alarm activates when the tailgate, bonnet, or doors are forcibly opened. The alarm does not activate if the tailgate or doors are opened with the remote transmitter or keyless access system.

Unlock the vehicle using the remote transmitter or keyless access system, or turn the power mode to ON. The system, along with the horn and flashing lights, is deactivated.

The security system alarm will continue for approximately 5 minutes before the security system deactivates.

The system will go through ten 30-second cycles, during which the horn will sound and an emergency indicator will flash.

Depending on circumstances, the security system may continue operating for more than 5 minutes.

Do not set the security system alarm when someone is in the vehicle or a window is open. The system can accidentally activate when:

- Unlocking the door with the lock tab.
- Opening the bonnet with the bonnet release.

If the 12-volt battery goes dead after you have set the security system alarm, the security alarm may sound once the 12-volt battery is recharged or replaced.

If this occurs, deactivate the security system alarm by unlocking a door using the remote transmitter or keyless access system.

Do not alter the system or add other devices to it. Doing so may damage the system and make your vehicle inoperable.

If you unlock a door with the built-in key while the security system is activated, the alarm will sound.

Setting the security system alarm

The security system alarm automatically sets when the following conditions have been met:

- The power mode is set to VEHICLE OFF.
- The bonnet is closed.
- All doors and the tailgate are locked from outside with the remote transmitter or keyless access system.

When the security system alarm sets

The security system alarm indicator in the instrument panel blinks and the blinking interval changes after about 15 seconds.

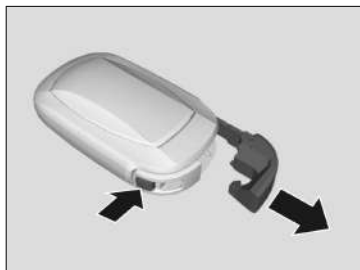
To cancel the security system alarm

The security system alarm is cancelled when the vehicle is unlocked using the remote transmitter or keyless access system, or when the power mode is set to ON. The security system alarm indicator goes off at the same time.

Built-in Key

The built-in key can be used to lock/unlock the doors, tailgate, and charge lid when the keyless remote battery becomes weak and the power door lock/unlock operation is disabled.

■ Removing the Built-in Key

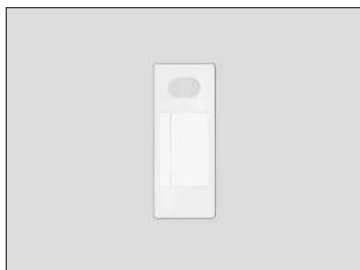


To remove the built-in key, push the release button and then pull out the key. To reinstall the built-in key, push the built-in key into the keyless remote until it clicks.

❶ Release Button

❷ Built-in Key

Key Number Tag



Contains a number that you will need if you purchase a replacement key.

- If you lose your key and you cannot activate the power system, contact a dealer.

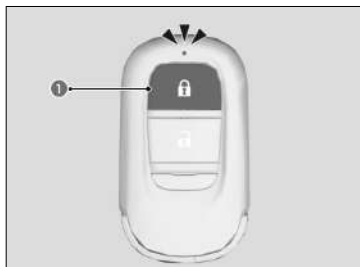


Keep the key number tag separate from the key in a safe place outside of your vehicle.

Locking/Unlocking

Using the Remote Transmitter

Locking the doors and tailgate

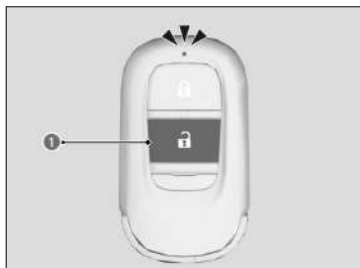


Press the lock button.

- » Some exterior lights flash three times; all the doors, tailgate, and charge lid lock; and the security system sets.
- » The super locking function is activated.

1 Lock Button

Unlocking the doors and tailgate



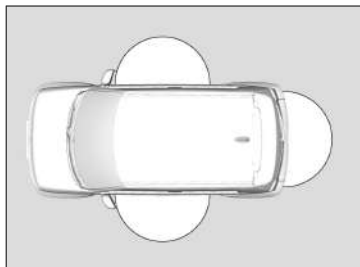
Press the unlock button.

- » Some exterior lights flash once, and all doors, tailgate, and charge lid unlocks.

1 Unlock Button

If you do not open a door or the tailgate within 30 seconds of unlocking the vehicle with the remote transmitter, the doors, tailgate and charge lid will automatically relock.

Using the Keyless Access System



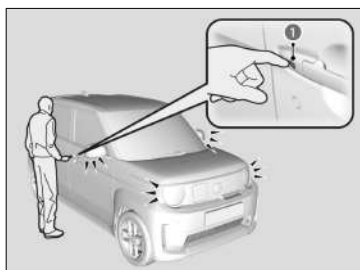
When you carry the keyless remote, you can lock/unlock the doors, tailgate, and charge lid. You can lock/unlock the doors, charge lid, and tailgate within a radius of about 80 cm (32 inches) from the outside door handle or tailgate outer handle.



The light flash settings can be customized using the audio/information screen.

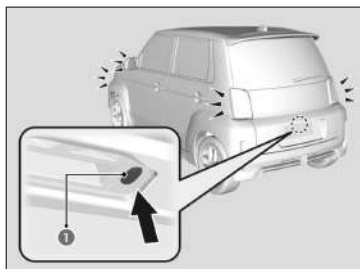
Customized Features P.190

Locking the doors and tailgate



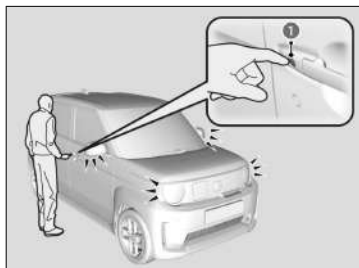
- Press the door lock/unlock button on the front door or press the lock button on the tailgate.
 - » Some exterior lights flash three times; all the doors, tailgate and charge lid lock; and the security system sets.
 - » The super locking function is activated.

1 Door Lock/Unlock Button



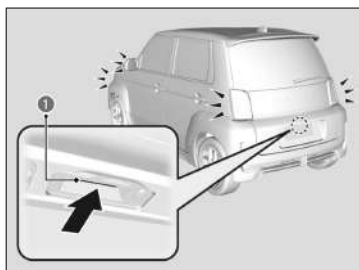
1 Lock Button

Unlocking the doors and tailgate



- Press the door lock/unlock button on the front door or press the outer handle on the tailgate.
 - » Some exterior lights flash once; all the doors, tailgate and charge lid unlocks.

1 Door Lock/Unlock Button



1 Outer Handle

If you do not open a door or the tailgate within 30 seconds of unlocking the vehicle with the keyless access system, the doors, tailgate and charge lid will automatically relock.

You cannot lock or unlock doors using the keyless access system when the power mode is set to any mode other than VEHICLE OFF.

Conditions under which you may not be able to lock/unlock the doors

- Immediately after pressing the tailgate outer handle.
- Even within the 80 cm (32 inches) radius, you may not be able to lock/unlock the doors and tailgate with the keyless remote if it is above or below the outside handle.
- The keyless remote may not operate if it is too close to the door, door glass, or tailgate.

Super Locking

The super locking function disables the lock tabs on all doors.

Doors cannot be opened from the inside once super locking has been enabled.

⚠ WARNING

No one must be inside the vehicle with the super locking set. Persons locked in can get seriously sick or die from the heat built inside the vehicle if left in the sun.

Make sure there is no one inside the vehicle before setting the super locking.

If you unlock a door with the built-in key while the security system is activated, the alarm will sound.

To Cancel the Super Locking Function

Unlock the driver's door with the remote transmitter, keyless access system or key.

To Activate the Super Locking Function

- Press the lock button on the remote transmitter.
- Press the door lock button on the door handle or the tailgate.

Locking/Unlocking the Doors Using a key

If the lock or unlock button of the keyless remote does not work, use the key instead.



Fully insert the key and turn it.

» When you lock/unlock the driver's door with the key, all the other doors, tailgate and charge lid lock/unlock at the same time.

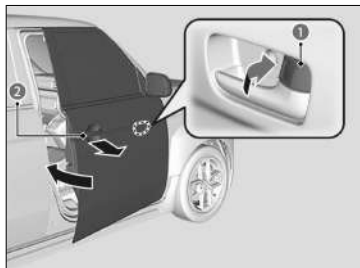
- 1** Lock
- 2** Unlock

If you unlock a door with the built-in key while the security system is activated, the alarm will sound.

Locking a Door Without Using a Key

If you do not have the key on you, or if for some reason you cannot lock a door using the key, you can lock the door without it.

Locking the driver's door



Push the lock tab forward **1**, then pull and hold the outside door handle **2**. Close the door, then release the handle.

» When you lock the driver's door, all the other doors, tailgate and charge lid lock at the same time.

Locking the passenger's doors

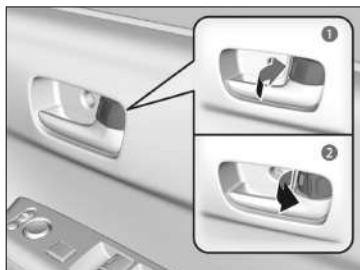
Push the lock tab forward and close the door.

Lockout Prevention System

The doors and tailgate cannot be locked when the keyless remote is inside the vehicle.

Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the Inside

Using the lock tab



Locking a door: Push the lock tab forward.

Unlocking a door: Pull the lock tab rearward.

» When you lock/unlock the door using the lock tab on the driver's door, all the other doors, tailgate and charge lid lock/unlock at the same time.

1 To lock

2 To unlock

■ Unlocking using the front door inner handle



Pull the front door inner handle.

» The door unlocks and opens in one motion.

1 Inner Handle

Unlocking and opening the driver's door from the inner handle unlocks all the other doors.

! The front door inner handles are designed to allow front seat occupants to open the door in one motion. However, this feature requires that front seat occupants never pull a front door inner handle while the vehicle is in motion.

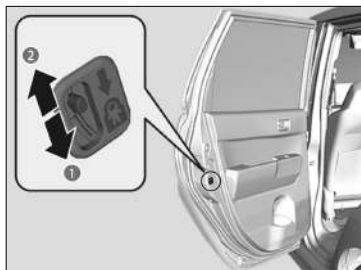
! Children should always ride in a rear seat where childproof door locks are provided.

 Childproof Door Locks ► P.63

Childproof Door Locks

The childproof door locks prevent the rear doors from being opened from the inside regardless of the position of the lock tab.

■ Setting the childproof door locks



Slide the lever in the rear door to the lock position, and close the door.

- ① Lock
- ② Unlock

- Open the door using the outside door handle.
- To open the door from the inside when the childproof door lock is on, put the lock tab in the unlock position, lower the rear window, put your hand out of the window, and pull the outside door handle.

What to Do If

■ The rear door cannot be opened from inside the vehicle. Why?

Check if the childproof lock is in the lock position. If so, open the rear door with the outside door handle.

To cancel this function, slide the lever up to the unlock position.

 Childproof Door Locks ▶P.63

■ Why does the beeper sound when I open the driver's door?

The beeper sounds when:

- The power mode is in ACCESSORY.
- The exterior lights are left on.

■ Why is the keyless remote not working properly?

If the distance at which the remote transmitter works varies, the battery is probably low.

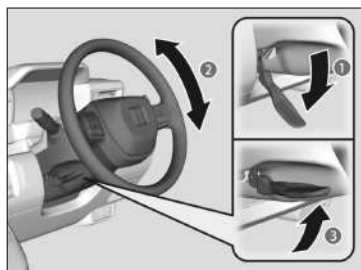
If the LED does not come on when you press a button, the battery is dead.

 Replacing the Remote Battery ▶P.314

Steering Wheel

Adjusting the Steering Wheel

The steering wheel height from your body can be adjusted so that you can comfortably grip the steering wheel in an appropriate driving posture.



- ① To Release
- ② Adjust
- ③ To Lock

- [1] While the vehicle is stopped, push the steering wheel adjustment lever down.
 - » The steering wheel adjustment lever is under the steering column.
- [2] Move the steering wheel up or down.
 - » Make sure you can see the instrument panel gauges and indicators.
- [3] Pull the steering wheel adjustment lever up to lock the steering wheel in position.
 - » After adjusting the position, make sure you have securely locked the steering wheel in place by trying to move it up and down.

WARNING

Adjusting the steering wheel position while driving may cause you to lose control of the vehicle and be seriously injured in a crash.

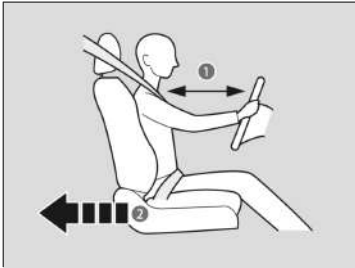
Adjust the steering wheel only when the vehicle is stopped.

Seats

Adjusting the Seat

Always make seat adjustments before driving.

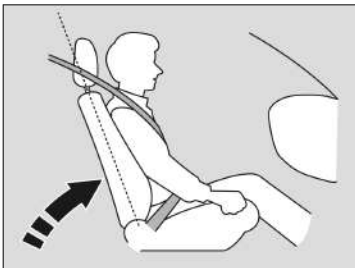
Maintain a Proper Sitting Position



- 1 Allow sufficient space.
- 2 Move back.

Adjusting the Seat Positions

Adjust the driver's seat as far back as possible while allowing you to maintain full control of the vehicle. You should be able to sit upright, well back in the seat and be able to adequately press the pedals without leaning forward, and grip the steering wheel comfortably. The passenger's seat should be adjusted in a similar manner so that it is as far back from the front airbag in the dashboard as possible.



Adjusting the Seat-Backs

Adjust the driver's seat-back to a comfortable, upright position, leaving ample space between your chest and the airbag cover in the centre of the steering wheel. The front seat passenger should also adjust their seat-back to a comfortable, upright position.

Reclining a seat-back so that the shoulder part of the belt no longer rests against the occupant's chest reduces the protective capability of the belt. It also increases the chance of sliding under the belt in a crash and being seriously injured. The farther a seat-back is reclined, the greater the risk of injury.

WARNING

Make sure the seat-backs are latched securely before driving.

 WARNING

Sitting too close to a front airbag can result in serious injury or death if the front airbags inflate.

Always sit as far back from the front airbags as possible while maintaining control of the vehicle.

 WARNING

Reclining the seat-back too far can result in serious injury or death in a crash.

Adjust the seat-back to an upright position, and sit well back in the seat.

 WARNING

Sitting improperly or out of position can result in serious injury or death in a crash.

Always sit upright, well back in the seat, with your feet on the floor.

Head Restraints

Your vehicle is equipped with head restraints in all seating positions.

The front seat head restraints are not adjustable.

When sitting in the rear seats, make sure to raise and be properly secured the rear seat head restraints before driving.

 WARNING

Failure to reinstall or correctly reinstall the head restraints can result in severe injury during a crash.

Always replace the head restraints before driving.

 WARNING

Improperly positioning head restraints reduces their effectiveness and increases the likelihood of serious injury in a crash.

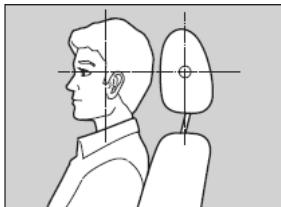
Make sure head restraints are in place and positioned properly before driving.

WARNING

When you use the head restraints in the rear seating positions, pull up the head restraints to its highest position. Do not use in any lower position.

In order for the head restraint system to work properly:

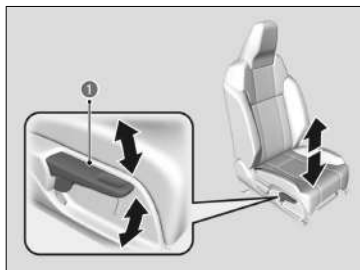
- Do not hang any items on the head restraints, or from the restraint legs.
- Do not place any objects between an occupant and the seat-back.
- Install each restraint in its proper location.



Head restraints are most effective for protection against whiplash and other rear impact crash injuries when the center of the back of the occupant's head rests against the center of the restraint. The tops of the occupant's ears should be level with the center height of the restraint.

Adjusting the Front Seat Positions

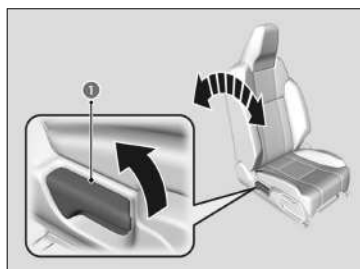
Once a seat is adjusted correctly, rock it back and forth to make sure it is locked in position.



Height Adjustment (Driver's seat only):

Pull up or push down the lever to raise or lower the seat.

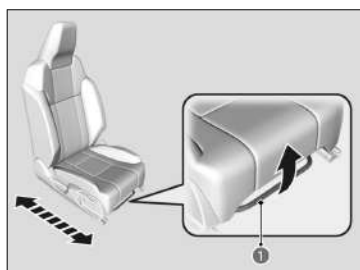
1 Lever



Seat-back Angle Adjustment:

Pull up the lever to change the angle.

1 Lever

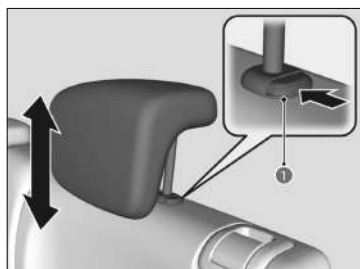


Horizontal Position Adjustment:

Pull up on the bar to move the seat, then release the bar.

1 Bar

Adjusting the Rear Seat Positions



1 Release Button

A passenger sitting in the rear seating position should adjust the height of their head restraint to an appropriate position before the vehicle begins moving.

To raise the head restraint: Pull it upward.

To lower the head restraint: Push it down while pressing the release button(s).

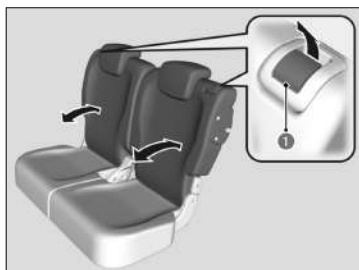
To remove the head restraint:

Pull the restraint up as far as it will go. Then, push the release button and pull the restraint up and out.

To reinstall a head restraint:

Insert the legs back in place, then adjust the head restraint to an appropriate height while pressing the release button.

» Pull up on the restraint to make sure it is locked in position.



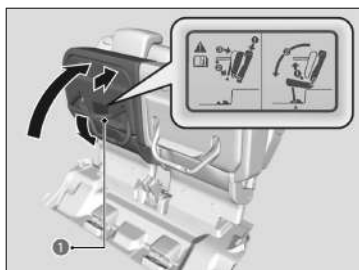
Seat-back angle adjustment:

Pull up the lever to change the angle.

1 Lever

Folding the Rear Seat Up

Separately lift up the left and right rear seat cushions to make room for luggage area.



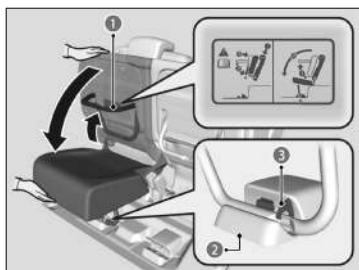
1 Seat Leg

Lifting up the seat cushion

- [1] Lower the head restraint to the lowest position.
- [2] Pull up the rear seat cushion.
- [3] Fold the seat leg down while pushing the seat cushion firmly against the seat-back to lock it.

Putting the seat in the original position

- [1] Hold the seat cushion, and pull up the seat leg fully.
 - » The seat cushion can abruptly fall down once you pull up the seat leg.
- [2] Slowly lower the seat cushion, and set the seat leg in the floor guide until it latches in place.



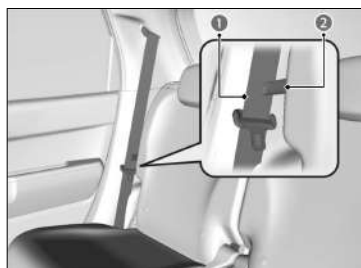
1 Seat Leg

2 Guide

3 Latch

Folding Down the Rear Seats

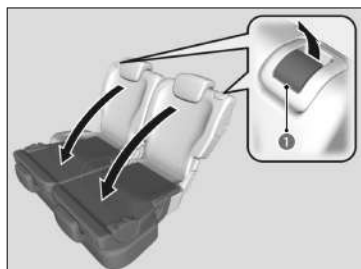
The rear seats can be folded down separately to allow for additional storage space.



- 1 Seat belt
- 2 Holder

To hold down the seat

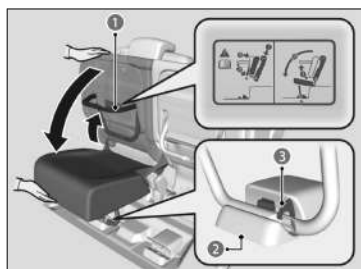
- [1] Lower the head restraint to the lowest position.
- [2] Retract the seat belt into the holder.
- [3] Pull the release lever and fold down the seat-back.



- 1 Release Lever

To return the seat to the original position

- [1] Pull up the seat-back in the upright position.
- [2] Hold the seat cushion, and pull up the seat leg fully.
 - » The seat cushion can abruptly fall down once you pull up the seat leg.
- [3] Slowly lower the seat cushion, and set the seat leg in the floor guide until it latches in place.

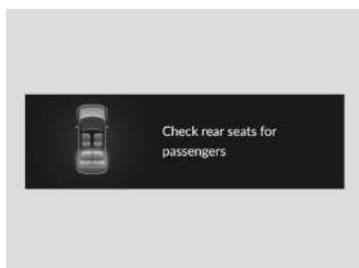


- 1 Seat Leg
- 2 Guide
- 3 Latch

! Make sure all items in the luggage area or items extending to the rear seats are properly secured. Loose items can fly forward if you have to brake hard.

Rear Seat Reminder

This feature alerts you to the possible presence of passengers or items in the rear seats before you exit the vehicle. It activates when the vehicle is set to VEHICLE OFF if the rear doors were opened shortly before or after the vehicle was set to ON. A reminder appears on the driver information interface and an alert will sound when the power mode is set to VEHICLE OFF.



A reminder appears on the driver information interface and an alert will sound when the power mode is set to VEHICLE OFF.

- When the power mode is set to VEHICLE OFF, the reminder comes on briefly, then the function is deactivated.
- The reminder will not work if the power mode has not been set to ON within 10 minutes of operating the rear doors.
- The system does not detect passengers in the rear seats. Instead, it can detect when a rear door is opened and closed, indicating that there may be something in the rear seats.



You can turn off the notification setting.

Q Customized Features **►** P.190

Seat Belts

About Your Seat Belts

Seat belts are the single most effective safety device because they keep you connected to the vehicle so that you can take advantage of many built-in safety features. They also help to keep you from being thrown against the inside of the vehicle, against any passengers, or out of the vehicle. When worn properly, seat belts also keep your body properly positioned in a crash so that you can take full advantage of the additional protection provided by the airbags.

Lap/shoulder seat belts

All four seating positions are equipped with lap/shoulder seat belts with emergency locking retractors. In normal driving, the retractor lets you move freely while keeping some tension on the belt. During a collision or sudden stop, the retractor locks to restrain your body.

The seat belt must be properly secured when using a front-facing child restraint system.

Protecting Child Passengers ▶ P.27

In addition, seat belts help to protect you in almost every type of crash, including:

- frontal impacts
- side impacts
- rear impacts
- rollovers

Seat belts cannot completely protect you in every crash. But in most cases, seat belts can reduce your risk of serious injury.

Most countries require you to wear seat belts. Take time to familiarise with the legal requirements of the countries in which you will drive.

WARNING

Not wearing a seat belt properly increases the chance of serious injury or death in a crash, even though your vehicle has airbags.

Be sure you and your passengers always wear seat belts and wear them properly.

WARNING: Seat belts are designed to bear upon the bony structure of the body, and should be worn low across the front of the pelvis or the pelvis, chest and shoulders, as applicable; wearing the lap section of the belt across the abdominal area must be avoided.

WARNING: Seat belts should be adjusted as firmly as possible, consistent with comfort, to provide the protection for which they have been designed. A slack belt will greatly reduce the protection afforded to the wearer.

WARNING: Belts should not be worn with straps twisted.

WARNING: Each belt assembly must only be used by one occupant; it is dangerous to put a belt around a child being carried on the occupant's lap.



Follow these guidelines for proper use:

- All occupants should sit upright, well back in the seat, and remain in that position for the duration of the trip. Slouching and leaning reduce the effectiveness of the belt and can increase the chance of serious injury in a crash.
- Never place the shoulder part of a lap/shoulder seat belt under your arm or behind your back. This could cause very serious injuries in a crash.
- Two people should never use the same seat belt. If they do, they could be very seriously injured in a crash.
- Do not put any accessories on the seat belts. Devices intended to improve comfort or reposition the shoulder part of a seat belt can reduce the protective capability and increase the chance of serious injury in a crash.



If you extend the seat belt too quickly, it will lock in place.

If this happens, slightly retract the seat belt, then extend it slowly.

Seat Belt Reminder



The seat belt reminder informs you that the occupant's seat belt is not being fastened. The warning will disappear when you wear your seat belt.



Fastened



Unfastened

When driving with an unfastened seat belt, the buzzer will stop when the vehicle is stopped or a certain period of time has passed.

- » Even when no one is sitting in the front passenger seat, the system may react if luggage is placed on the seat.
- » The system may not react if a child or small person is seated in the front passenger seat, or if a cushion is being used.

If none of these conditions exist, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

Automatic Seat Belt Tensioners

The front seats and the outer rear seats are equipped with automatic seat belt tensioners to enhance safety.

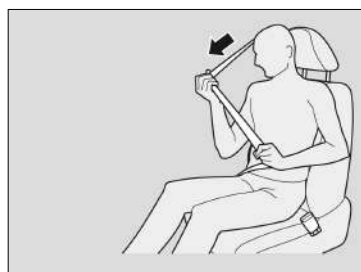
The tensioners automatically tighten the front seat belts and the outer rear seat belts during a moderate-to-severe frontal or side collision, sometimes even if the collision is not severe enough to inflate the front airbags.

The seat belt tensioners can only operate once. If a tensioner is activated, the SRS indicator will come on. Have a dealer replace the tensioner and thoroughly inspect the seat belt system as it may not offer protection in a subsequent crash.

Fastening a Seat Belt

After adjusting a front seat to the proper position, and while sitting upright and well back in the seat:

 Adjusting the Seat ▶ P.66



[1] Pull the seat belt out slowly.



[2] Insert the latch plate (1) into the buckle (2), then tug on the belt to make sure the buckle is secure.

- » Make sure that the belt is not twisted or caught on anything.



- [3] Position the lap part of the belt as low as possible across your hips (see illustration), then pull up on the shoulder part of the belt so the lap part fits snugly. This lets your strong pelvic bones take the force of a crash and reduces the chance of internal injuries.
- [4] If necessary, pull up on the belt again to remove any slack, then check that the belt rests across the centre of your chest and over your shoulder. This spreads the forces of a crash over the strongest bones in your upper body.

To release the belt, push the red **PRESS** button and then guide the belt by hand until it has retracted completely.

When exiting the vehicle, be sure the belt is properly stowed so that it will not get caught in the closing door.



If the seat belt appears to be locked in a fully retracted position, firmly pull out on the shoulder belt once, then push it back in.

Then, smoothly pull it out of the retractor and fasten. If you are unable to release the seat belt from a fully retracted position, do not allow anyone to sit in the seat, and take your vehicle to a dealer for repair.

 About Your Seat Belts ► P.73



No one should sit in a seat with an inoperative seat belt or one that does not appear to be working correctly.

Using a seat belt that is not working properly may not protect the occupant in a crash. Have a dealer check the belt as soon as possible.



WARNING

Improperly positioning the seat belts can cause serious injury or death in a crash.

Make sure all seat belts are properly positioned before driving.



Never insert any foreign objects into the buckle or retractor mechanism.

Advice for Pregnant Women



Consider alternative:

If you are pregnant, the best way to protect yourself and your unborn child when driving or riding in a vehicle is to always wear a seat belt. When positioning the seat belt, wear the shoulder belt section across the chest, avoiding the abdomen, and keep the lap belt portion as low as possible across the hips (see illustration).

Each time you have a checkup, ask your doctor if it is okay for you to drive.



To reduce the risk of injuries to both you and your unborn child that can be caused by an inflating front airbag:

- When driving, sit upright and adjust the seat as far back as possible while allowing full control of the vehicle.
- When sitting in the front passenger's seat, adjust the seat as far back as possible.

Seat Belt Inspection

Regularly check the condition of your seat belts as follows:

- Pull each belt out fully, and look for frays, cuts, burns, and wear.
- Check that the latch plates and buckles work smoothly and the belts retract easily.
 - » If a belt does not retract easily, cleaning the belt may correct the problem. Only use a mild soap and warm water. Do not use bleach or cleaning solvents. Make sure the belt is completely dry before allowing it to retract.

Any belt that is not in good condition or working properly will not provide proper protection and should be replaced as soon as possible.

A belt that has been worn during a crash may not provide the same level of protection in a subsequent crash. Have your seat belts inspected by a dealer after any collision.

WARNING

Not checking or maintaining seat belts can result in serious injury or death if the seat belts do not work properly when needed.

Check your seat belts regularly and have any problem corrected as soon as possible.

WARNING: No modifications or additions should be made by the user which will either prevent the seat belt adjusting devices from operating to remove slack, or prevent the seat belt assembly from being adjusted to remove slack.

WARNING: It is essential to replace the entire assembly after it has been worn in a severe impact even if damage to the assembly is not obvious.

WARNING: Care should be taken to avoid contamination of the webbing with polishes, oils and chemicals, and particularly battery acid. Cleaning may safely be carried out using mild soap and water. The belt should be replaced if webbing becomes frayed, contaminated or damaged.

Anchorage Points

Front Seats



When replacing the seat belts, use the anchorage points shown in the images.

The front and rear seat have lap/shoulder belts.

Rear Seats



Mirrors

About Mirrors

Keep the inside and outside mirrors clean and adjusted for best visibility.

Interior Rearview Mirror



Adjust the angle of the rearview mirror when you are sitting in the correct driving position. Adjust the mirrors before you start driving.

Power Door Mirrors

You can adjust the door mirrors when the power mode is in ON.



① L/R Selector Switch:

Select the left or right mirror. After adjusting the mirror, return the switch to the centre position.

② Mirror Position Adjustment Switch:

Press the switch left, right, up, or down to move the mirror.

③ Folding Button:

Press the folding button to fold in and out the door mirrors.

Automatic Folding Door Mirror Function

When the door is locked or unlocked via the remote transmitter or keyless access system, the door mirrors will automatically fold in or return to their previous position, even when the power mode is set to OFF.

Folding in the door mirrors

- Press the lock button on the remote transmitter, press the door lock button on the front door or the tailgate lock button.
 - » The mirrors start folding in automatically.

Folding out the door mirrors

- Unlock all doors and the tailgate using the remote transmitter or keyless access system.
 - » The mirrors start folding out automatically.
- If you use the folding button to fold the door mirrors, the auto folding door mirror function will not work.

Door mirrors will not fold automatically when locking from inside the vehicle using the lock tab.



You can turn the automatic folding door mirror function on and off.

 Customized Features  P.190

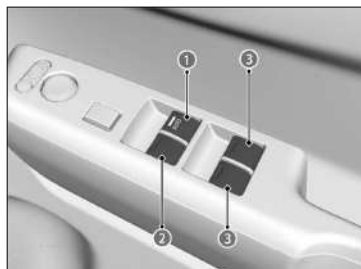
Windows

Opening/Closing the Power Windows

The power windows can be opened and closed when the power mode is in ON using the switches on the doors.

The driver's side switches can be used to open and close all the windows. The power window lock button on the driver's side must be switched off to open and close the windows from anywhere other than the driver's seat.

When the power window lock button is pushed in, the indicator comes on and you can only operate the driver's window. Turn the power window lock button on if a child is in the vehicle.



- ① Driver's Window Switch
- ② Front Passenger's Window Switch
- ③ Rear Passenger's Window Switch

Manual operation

To open: Push the switch down lightly, and hold it until the desired position is reached.

To close: Pull the switch up lightly, and hold it until the desired position is reached.

Automatic operation

To open: Push the switch down firmly.

To close: Pull the switch up firmly.

The window opens or closes completely. To stop the window at any time, push or pull the switch briefly.

- The power windows can be operated for up to 10 minutes after you set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF.
- Closing driver's door cancels this function.

Auto Reverse

- If a power window senses resistance when closing automatically, it will stop closing and reverse direction.

If the auto reverse function is activated due to a malfunction or impact caused by the road surface or driving conditions and the window cannot be closed automatically, you can close it by continuously pulling up the switch briefly.

WARNING

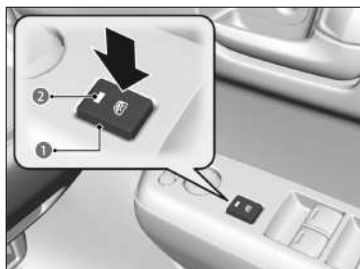
Closing a power window on someone's hands or fingers can cause serious injury.

Make sure your passengers are away from the windows before closing them.

- The driver's window auto reverse function is disabled when you continuously pull up the switch.
- The auto reverse function stops sensing when the window is almost closed to ensure that it fully closes.

WARNING: Always take the ignition key with you whenever you leave the vehicle alone or with other occupants.

Power Window Lock Button



When the power window lock button is set to ON (indicator on), any window other than that on the driver's side will not operate.

1 Power Window Lock Button

2 Indicator

 Turn the power window lock button on if a child is in the vehicle.

Tailgate

Precautions for Opening/Closing the Tailgate

Always make sure individuals and objects are clear of the tailgate before opening or closing it.

- Open the tailgate all the way.
 - » If it is not fully opened, the tailgate may begin to close under its own weight.
- Be careful when it is windy. The wind may cause the tailgate to close.

Keep the tailgate closed while driving to:

» Avoid possible damage.

- Do not leave the keyless remote in the vehicle when you get out. Carry it with you.
- Even if you are not carrying the keyless remote, you can unlock the tailgate while someone else with the keyless remote is within range.



Make sure cargo or other items do not touch the tailgate support struts.

1 Tailgate Support Struts

WARNING

Anyone caught in the path of a tailgate that is being opened or closed can be seriously injured.

Make sure people are clear of the tailgate before opening or closing it.



Be careful not to hit your head on the tailgate or to put your hands between the tailgate and the luggage area when closing the tailgate.

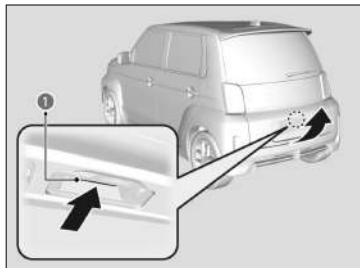


Do not allow any passenger in the luggage space. They may get hurt during hard braking, a sudden acceleration, or a crash.

Opening/Closing the Tailgate

Using the Tailgate Outer Handle

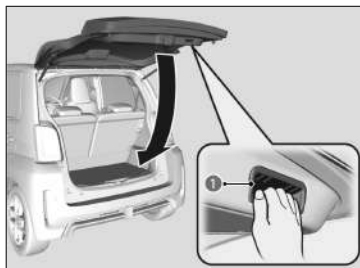
Opening the Tailgate



When all the doors are unlocked, the tailgate is unlocked. Press the tailgate outer handle and lift open the tailgate.

1 Tailgate Outer Handle

Closing the Tailgate



To close the tailgate, grab the inner handle, pull the tailgate down, and push it closed from outside.

1 Inner handle

Load Limit

About Load Limit

When you load luggage, the total weight of the vehicle, all passengers, and luggage must not exceed the maximum permissible weight.

 About Specifications ▶ P.350

The load for the front and rear axles also must not exceed the maximum permissible axle weight.

 About Specifications ▶ P.350

WARNING

Overloading or improper loading can affect handling and stability and cause a crash in which you can be hurt or killed.

Follow all load limits and other loading guidelines in this manual.

Towing a Trailer

About Towing a Trailer

Your vehicle is not designed to, and cannot safely, tow a trailer nor have a tow hitch installed. Do not install a tow hitch on, or tow with, your vehicle.

Driving Operation

Turn Power System On or Off

POWER Button	88
Turn on Power System	89
Turn off Power System	90
What to Do If	90

Shifting

About Shift Operation	91
-----------------------	----

Braking

Foot Brake	95
Parking Brake	95
Automatic Brake Hold	98
Anti-lock Brake System (ABS)	101
Emergency Stop Signal	101

Starting and Driving

Starting to Drive	103
-------------------	-----

Parking Your Vehicle

When Stopped	105
--------------	-----

Rear View Camera

About Rear View Camera	106
------------------------	-----

Charging

Before Charging	108
About Charging	110

Turn Signals/Light Switches

Turn Signals	118
Headlights/Position Lights	118

Wipers and Washers

Windscreen Wipers/Washers	125
Rear Wiper/Washer	126
What to Do If	126

Defroster

Defrosting the Windscreen and Windows	128
What to Do If	129

Driving Features

Drive Mode System	130
Deceleration Paddle Selector	132
Single Pedal Control	134
Acoustic Vehicle Alerting System	136
Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System	136
Agile Handling Assist	138
Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)	139

Turn Power System On or Off

POWER Button

Changing the Power Mode



If you carry the keyless remote and press **POWER** button without depressing the brake pedal, the power mode will change in this order: VEHICLE OFF → ACCESSORY → ON → VEHICLE OFF.

VEHICLE OFF:

Vehicle power is turned OFF.

ACCESSORY:

The audio system and some accessories can be used.

ON:

All accessories can be used.

- Do not leave the power mode in ACCESSORY or ON when you get out.

If the keyless remote is set in a storage box or another place where its signal can be interrupted, the power mode may not change.

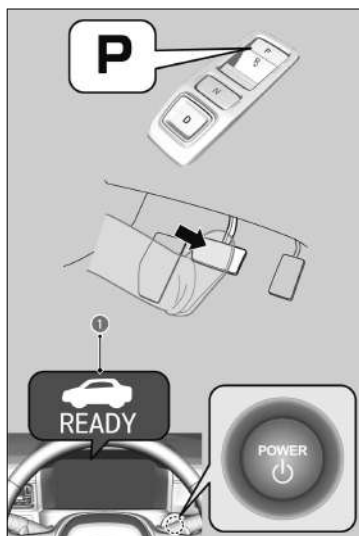
Automatic Power Off

If you leave the vehicle for 30 to 60 minutes with the transmission in **P** and the power mode in ACCESSORY, the vehicle automatically goes into the mode similar to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK) to avoid draining the 12-volt battery.

Power Mode Reminder

If you open the driver's door when the power mode is set to ACCESSORY, a warning beep sounds.

Turn on Power System



- [1] Make sure the parking brake is applied
[Q Parking Brake](#) ▶ P.95
- [2] Depress the brake pedal, then press the **POWER** button while the shift position is in **P**.
 - » The **READY** indicator (1) comes on when the power system is on and you can start driving.
 - » Keep depressing the brake pedal until the indicator comes on.
 - » If the outside temperature is extremely low, the indicator does not come on and a warning message appears on the gauge.

- Keep your foot firmly on the brake pedal when starting the power system.
- When turning on the power system in cold weather, turn off all electrical accessories such as the lights, climate control system, and rear demister in order to reduce the 12-volt battery drain.
- Do not hold the **POWER** button to turn the power system on. If the power system does not start, wait at least 30 seconds before trying again.
- The power system may not activate if the keyless remote is subjected to strong radio waves.
- The immobilizer system protects your vehicle from theft. If an improperly coded device is used, the power system does not activate.

[Q Immobilizer System](#) ▶ P.54

- If the power system temperature is low, the message “**High voltage battery too cold. Power may be reduced. Avoid strong acceleration and high speed.**” may be displayed. This message will disappear once the power system temperature returns to a normal range. If the message does not disappear, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.



To prevent unexpected accidents, do not depress the accelerator pedal when turning on the power system.

Turn off Power System

While the vehicle is completely stopped, change the shift position to **P**, then press the **POWER** button.

» Do not release the brake pedal until you have confirmed that **P** is shown on the shift position indicator.

What to Do If

If the keyless remote battery is weak

Bring the keyless remote close to the **POWER** button if the battery in the keyless remote is weak.

 Replacing the Remote Battery ► P.314

When the power system does not start

A pre-registered key is required.

 Immobilizer System ► P.54

If the keyless remote is set on the instrument panel, in a storage box, or another place where its signal can be interrupted, the power mode may not change.

Why does the brake pedal sink down slightly when the power mode is turned on?

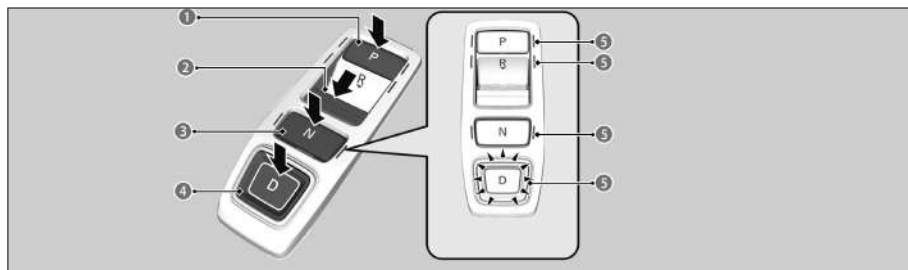
This is related to the activation of the electric brake system, and it is normal.

Why is a motor sound coming from under the bonnet?

Immediately after turning the power system on or while driving, you may hear a motor sound coming from under the bonnet due to a system check.

Shifting

About Shift Operation



2

Driving Operation

① **P** Park: Press the **P** button.

» Used when parking or turning the power on or off.

② **R** Reverse: Press the **R** button.

» Used when reversing.

» The beeper sounds once when you change to **R**.

③ **N** Neutral: Press the **N** button.

» Transmission is not locked.

④ **D** Drive: Press the **D** button.

» Used for normal driving.

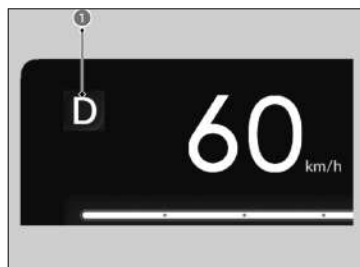
⑤ Shift Button Indicator

Precautions when parking:

Park your vehicle in a safe place with the power mode in ON, then apply the brakes and press the **P** button to put the transmission in **P**.

» The indicators on the sides of the **P** button come on.

Gauge display



① Shift Position Indicator/Transmission System Indicator

- Use the shift position indicator and the shift button indicator to check the shift position before and after selecting a shift button.
- When shifting positions in extremely low temperatures -30°C, there may be a short delay before the shift position is displayed.



You can turn the reverse alert sound on/off.

Customized Features ▶ P.190



To avoid damage to the drive system, only shift between forward and reverse when the brake pedal is depressed and the vehicle has come to a complete standstill. Always keep your foot on the brake pedal until you have confirmed that **P** is shown on the gauge.



Do not change the shift position while pressing the accelerator pedal. You could damage the drive system.



If the transmission system indicator blinks when driving, in any shift position, there is a problem with the transmission. Avoid sudden acceleration and have the transmission checked by a dealer as soon as possible.



To prevent malfunction and unintended engagement:

- Do not spill any liquids on or around shift buttons.
- Do not place or drop any objects on or around shift buttons.
- Do not let passengers or children operate the shift buttons.

Automatic **P** Position Function

■ When opening the driver's door

If you open the driver's door under the following conditions, the shift position automatically changes to **P**.

- The vehicle is stationary with the power mode in ON, or moving at 2 km/h (1mph) or slower.
- The shift position is in a position other than **P**.

- You have unfastened the driver side seat belt.
- » If you manually change the shift position from **P** with the brake pedal depressed, the shift position will automatically return to **P** once you release the brake pedal.

! The system will automatically shift to **P** when the conditions are met, but in the interest of safety, you should always put the shift position in **P** before opening the driver's door when parking.

Q When Stopped ► P.105

! If you want to drive the vehicle after the shift position has automatically changed to **P**, close the door, fasten the seat belt, depress the brake pedal, then change the shift position.

When turning off the power mode

If you turn the power system off while the vehicle is stationary, and the shift position is in a position other than **P**, the shift position automatically changes to **P**.

N Position Holding Mode (Car Wash Mode)

With the power system on:

[1] Press and hold the brake pedal.

[2] Select **N**.

[3] Within 5 seconds, press **POWER** button.

- » This puts the vehicle in car wash mode which must be used when your vehicle is pulled through a conveyor type automatic car wash where you or an attendant do not remain in the vehicle.
- » The shift position remains in **N** with the power mode in ACCESSORY for 15 minutes, then, it automatically changes to **P**.

Manually changing to **P** cancels ACCESSORY mode. The **P** indicator comes on and the power mode changes to OFF.

Note that the shift position may not stay in **N** position while any of the following indicators is on:

- Transmission system indicator
- Power system indicator
- 12-volt battery charging system indicator

Restrictions on Selecting a Shift Position

You cannot select a shift position under certain circumstances that may lead to a crash.

- » When in a safe condition, select the appropriate shift position with the vehicle is stopped and depressing the brake pedal.
- » Make sure that the **READY** indicator comes on.

When the shift position is in:	1. Under these circumstances:	2. If you try to change to the following:	3. The shift position remains in/ changes to:
P	The brake pedal is not depressed.	Other shift position	P
	The accelerator pedal is depressed.		
N	The vehicle is moving at low speed without the brake pedal depressed.	Other shift position	N
	The vehicle is moving at low speed with the accelerator pedal depressed.		
N or D	The vehicle is moving forward.	R	N
R or N	The vehicle is moving backward.	D	N
R , N , or D	The vehicle is moving.	P	N
P or N	The READY indicator is not on.	A shift position other than P or N	P or N

Braking

Foot Brake

The foot brake is used to slow down or stop your vehicle, and that is operated by a brake pedal.

» When you depress the brake pedal, you may hear a operating sound from the motor compartment.

! Check the brakes after driving through deep water, or if there is a buildup of road surface water.
If necessary, dry the brakes by lightly depressing the pedal several times.

! If you hear a continuous metallic friction sound when applying the brakes, the brake pads need to be replaced. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

! Do not constantly depress the brake pedal while going downhill, as it builds up heat.
If you constantly depress the brake pedal while going downhill, it will build up heat, which reduces the brake effectiveness. Apply regenerative braking by taking your foot off the accelerator pedal and downshifting to a speed position.

Brake Assist System

Designed to assist the driver by generating greater braking force when you depress the brake pedal hard during emergency braking. Press the brake pedal firmly for more powerful braking.

» When brake assist operates, the pedal may wiggle slightly and an operating noise may be heard.

Parking Brake

Use the parking brake to keep the vehicle stationary when parking.

- You may hear the electric parking brake system motor operating from the rear wheel area when you apply or release the parking brake.
- The brake pedal may slightly move due to the electric parking brake system operation when you apply or release the parking brake.
- You cannot apply or release the parking brake if the 12-volt battery goes dead.

 Emergency Power System On ▶P.328

- If you pull up and hold the electric parking brake switch while driving, the brakes on all four wheels are applied by the system until the vehicle comes to a stop. The electric parking brake then applies, and the switch should be released.

To Apply Manually



The electric parking brake can be applied any time the vehicle has 12-volt battery, no matter which position the power mode is in. Pull the electric parking brake switch (1) up gently and securely.

- » The indicator in the switch comes on.
- » The parking brake and brake system indicator (red) comes on.

To Release Manually

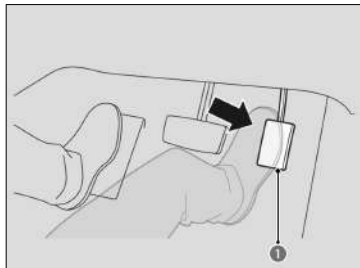


Depress the brake pedal, then press the electric parking brake switch (1).

- » The indicator in the switch goes off.
- » The parking brake and brake system indicator (red) goes off.

- The power mode must be in ON in order to release the electric parking brake.
- Manually releasing the parking brake using the switch helps your vehicle start slowly and smoothly when facing downhill on steep hills.

To Release Automatically



Gently depress the accelerator pedal (1) to start the vehicle.

» The parking brake and brake system indicator (red) goes off.

The parking brake may not be released automatically while the following indicators are on:

- Transmission system indicator
- Parking brake and brake system indicator (amber)
- Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System indicator
- Anti-lock Brake System (**ABS**) indicator
- Supplemental restraint system indicator



If the driver's seat belt is unfastened, the parking brake will not release automatically.

Automatic Parking Brake Feature

The parking brake is applied automatically when you set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF.

» The default setting for this feature is OFF.

■ Activating and deactivating the automatic parking brake feature

With the power mode is in ON, carry out the following steps to either activate or deactivate the automatic parking brake feature.

- [1] Change the shift position to **P**.
- [2] Without depressing the brake pedal, pull up the electric parking brake switch.
 - » Check that the parking brake and brake system indicator (red) has come on.
- [3] Pull up and hold the parking brake switch. When you hear a beeping sound, release the switch and within three seconds pull up and hold the switch again.
- [4] When you hear a sound indicating that the procedure is completed, release the switch.

- » Two beeps indicate that the feature has been activated.
- » One beep indicates that the feature has been deactivated.
- » To confirm that the parking brake is applied, check if the parking brake and brake system indicator (red) is on.

In the following situations, the parking brake automatically operates.

- When the vehicle has been stopped for more than 10 minutes by Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow or the automatic brake hold system.
- When the driver's seat belt is unfastened while your vehicle is stopped by ACC with Low Speed Follow or the automatic brake hold system.
- When the power mode is turned off while your vehicle is stopped by ACC with Low Speed Follow or the automatic brake hold system.
- When there is a problem with the automatic brake hold system while it is activated.

 In cold climates, the parking brake may freeze in place if applied. When parking the vehicle, chock the wheels and make sure the automatic parking brake feature is deactivated. Also, when putting your vehicle through a conveyor type car wash, when having your vehicle towed, etc., deactivate the automatic parking brake feature and leave the parking brake released.

Temporarily deactivate the automatic parking brake feature

If you need to temporarily deactivate the feature for when putting your vehicle through a conveyor type car wash or when having your vehicle towed, follow the procedure explained below.

- [1] Depress the brake pedal and bring the vehicle to a stop.
- [2] Set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF and then within two seconds push down the electric parking brake switch.
 - » Activation and deactivation settings for the feature will not be affected.
 - » Before temporarily deactivating the feature, make sure to first turn off both ACC with Low Speed Follow and the automatic brake hold system.
 - » To confirm that the parking brake is applied, check if the parking brake and brake system indicator (red) is on.

Automatic Brake Hold

Keeps the brake applied after releasing the brake pedal until the accelerator pedal is pressed. You can use this system while the vehicle is temporarily stopped, like at traffic lights and in heavy traffic.

⚠ WARNING

Activating the automatic brake hold system on steep hills or slippery roads may still allow the vehicle to move if you remove your foot from the brake pedal. If a vehicle unexpectedly moves, it may cause a crash resulting in serious injury or death.

Never activate the automatic brake hold system or rely on it to keep a vehicle from moving when stopped on a steep hill or slippery roads.

Using the automatic brake hold system to park the vehicle may result in the vehicle unexpectedly moving. If a vehicle moves unexpectedly, it may cause a crash, resulting in serious injury or death.

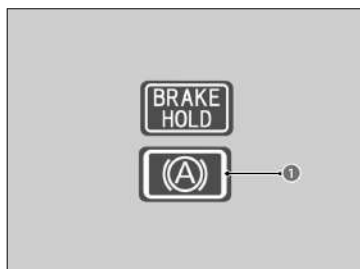
Never leave the vehicle when braking is temporarily kept by automatic brake hold and always park the vehicle by putting the transmission in **P** and applying the parking brake.

When using the automatic brake hold, keep your foot on the brake pedal until the automatic brake hold indicator comes on. If the vehicle unexpectedly moves, it may cause a crash resulting in serious injury or death. Release your foot from the brake pedal after the automatic brake hold indicator comes on.

Turning on the System

[1] Fasten your seat belt properly, then start the power system. Press the automatic brake hold button (1).

- » The automatic brake hold system indicator (2) comes on, and then the system goes into standby mode.
- » You cannot turn on the automatic brake hold while the single pedal control feature is turned on..



[2] Depress the brake pedal to come to a complete stop while the transmission into **D**, **N**.

- » The automatic brake hold indicator (1) comes on, and then the automatic brake hold operates. Take your foot off the brake pedal.
- » The automatic brake is held for up to 10 minutes.

The next time the power mode is set to ON, if the driver's seat belt is fastened, the system will return to standby mode.

! Make sure to turn off the automatic brake hold system before using an automated car wash.

System OFF



When you press the automatic brake hold button (1), the system is turned off.

If the indicator (2) is lit up, turn off the system while depressing the brake pedal.

If the system is turned off, it will remain off the next time the power system is started.

The system automatically cancels when:

- You engage the parking brake.
- You depress the brake pedal and put the transmission into **P** or **R**.

The system will automatically cancel and the parking brake will be applied when the following conditions are met:

- Braking is kept for more than 10 minutes.
- The driver's seat belt is unfastened.
- The power mode is set to VEHICLE OFF.
- There is a problem with automatic brake hold system.

Anti-lock Brake System (ABS)

ABS helps to maintain steering control and vehicle posture by preventing the wheels from locking up during sudden braking or braking on slippery surfaces when driving at speeds above 10 km/h (6 mph).

- » The electronic brake distribution (EBD) system, which is part of the ABS, also balances the front-to-rear braking distribution according to vehicle loading.
- » You should never pump the brake pedal. Let the ABS work for you by always keeping firm, steady pressure on the brake pedal. This is sometimes referred to as “stomp and steer.”
- The brake pedal may pulsate slightly when the ABS is working. Depress the brake pedal and keep holding the pedal firmly down.
- The ABS is not designed for the purpose of reducing the time or distance it takes for a vehicle to stop: It is designed to limit brake lockup which can lead to skidding and loss of steering control.

 The ABS may not function properly if tyre type and size are mixed. Make sure to use the same size and type of tyre, and the air pressures as specified.

 If the **ABS** indicator comes on while driving, there may be a problem with the system. While normal braking will not be affected, have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately.

Emergency Stop Signal

Activates when you brake hard while driving at 60 km/h (37 mph) or above to alert drivers behind you about sudden braking by rapidly flashing hazard warning lights. The hazard warning lights stop flashing when:

- You release the brake pedal.
- The ABS is deactivated.
- Your vehicle's decelerating speed becomes moderate.
- You press the hazard warning button.



The emergency stop signal is not a system that can prevent a possible rear-end collision caused by your hard braking. It flashes the hazard warning lights at the time you are braking hard. It is always recommended to avoid hard braking unless it is absolutely necessary.

Starting and Driving

Starting to Drive

- [1] Keeping your right foot on the brake pedal, select the shift position.
- [2] Gradually release the brake pedal and gently depress the accelerator pedal to pull away.
 - » The parking brake will release automatically. You can also release it by operating the parking brake switch.

 Parking Brake ▶ P.95

 Do not change the shift position to **N** while driving as you will lose regenerative braking (and acceleration) performance.

 If the power mode is set to ACCESSORY while driving, the power system will shut down and all steering and brake power assist functions will stop, making it difficult to control the vehicle.

 Avoid hard braking for the first 300 km (200 miles) after purchasing your new vehicle or replacing the brake pads or rotors, to allow for proper break-in.

Hill Start Assist System

Hill start assist keeps the brake engaged briefly to help prevent the vehicle from rolling on inclines as you move your foot from the brake pedal to the accelerator.

- » Hill start assist may not prevent the vehicle from rolling downhill on a very steep slope, and will not operate on small inclines.

Creeping

▼ Single pedal control is OFF

This vehicle creeps when the shift position is in **D** or **R**.

» Keep the brake pedal firmly depressed when stopped or ensure that brake-hold is engaged.

 Automatic Brake Hold  P.98

Parking Your Vehicle

When Stopped

- [1] Depress the brake pedal firmly and come to a complete stop.
- [2] With the brake pedal depressed, pull up the electric parking brake switch slowly, but fully.
- [3] Change the shift position to **P**.
 - » Do not release the brake pedal until you have confirmed that **P** is shown on the shift position indicator.

WARNING

The vehicle can roll away if left unattended without confirming that Park is engaged. A vehicle that rolls away could cause a crash resulting in serious injury or death.

Always keep your foot on the brake pedal until you have confirmed that **P** is shown on the shift position indicator.



Always set the parking brake, especially if you are parked on an incline.



The following may damage the driveline or cause the power system to overheat and fail:

- Depressing the accelerator and brake pedals simultaneously.
- Changing to **P** before the vehicle stops completely.
- Holding the vehicle by depressing the accelerator pedal when facing uphill.



In extremely cold temperatures, do not apply the parking brake but, if parking on a slope, either turn the front wheels so they will contact the curb if the vehicle rolls down the slope or block the wheels to keep the vehicle from moving.

If you do not take either precaution, the vehicle may roll unexpectedly, leading to a crash.

Rear View Camera

About Rear View Camera

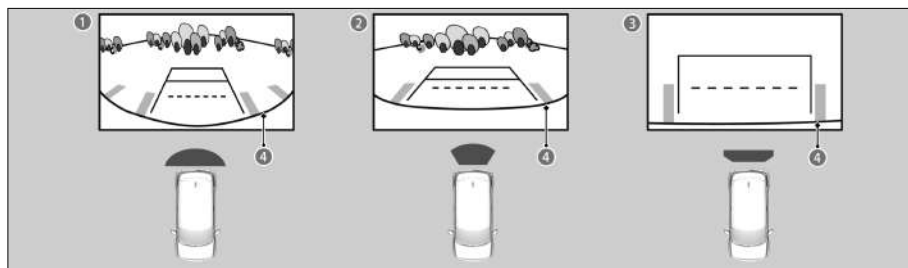
When the shift position is changed to **R**, the vehicle's rear view is automatically displayed on the screen.

- Visually confirm that it is safe to drive before backing up. Certain conditions (such as weather, lighting, and high temperatures) may also restrict the rear view. Do not rely on the rearview display which does not give you all information about conditions at the back of your vehicle.
- If the camera lens is covered with dirt or moisture, use a soft, moist cloth to keep the lens clean and free of debris.
- The camera view is restricted. You cannot see the corner ends of the bumper or what is underneath the bumper. Its unique lens also makes objects appear closer or farther than they actually are.

! If the vehicle's rear view is not displayed on the screen while the shift position is in **R**, there may be a problem with the system. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately.

Switching Camera Modes

You can view three different camera modes on the screen. Select the appropriate icon to switch the mode.

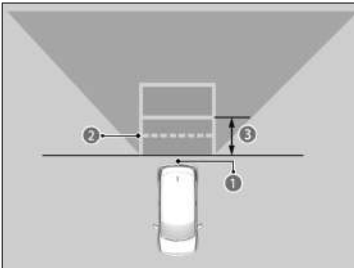


- 1**  Wide view mode
- 2**  Normal view mode
- 3**  Top down view mode
- 4**  Bumper

- If you were last using Wide view mode or Normal view mode, the same view mode will be activated the next time you change the shift position to **R**.

- If you were using Top down view mode before you turned off the power mode, Wide view mode will be displayed the next time you turn on the power mode and change the shift position to **R**.
- If you were using Top down view mode and about 10 seconds elapsed after you changed the shift position out of **R**, Wide view mode will be activated the next time you change the shift position to **R**.
- If you were using Top down view mode and change the shift position back to **R** within about 10 seconds after you changed it out of **R**, Top down view mode will be activated.

Distance between the vehicle and guideline



- ① Camera
- ② Tailgate open range
- ③ Approx. 1 m



Both the **Fixed Guideline** (which indicates distance between your vehicle and the rear surroundings) and **Dynamic Guideline** (which moves based on steering operation) can be turned on and off.

Customized Features ▶ P.190



The guidelines should be used as a reference only.

The positions/distances indicated by the guidelines and camera views on the display may differ from the actual positions/distances due to the changes in the vehicle height, road conditions, and other factors.

Display Adjustment

You can adjust the screen brightness by selecting the icon while the camera image is displayed.

This adjustment applies only to the camera screen.

Charging

Before Charging

Check the following items before you start charging your vehicle.

- Make sure to use a dedicated and properly grounded circuit.
 - » Have an electrician inspect the outlet you are using if you are unsure whether it meets these criteria.
- Make sure you plug the charging cable directly into the wall outlet dedicated to vehicle charging.
 - » Do not use any extension cords, AC plug adapters, or multi-outlet plugs.
- Make sure the charging cable is fully uncoiled before use.
- Make sure the charging equipment is free from any damage. Also, make sure the metal parts of the connector or inlet are free from any damage or corrosion.
 - » If you find any damage or corrosion on them, stop using them and consult a dealer.
- Make sure the charging equipment and inlet are clean.
 - » If you find any contamination or foreign object in the connector or inlet, consult a dealer.
- Make sure the charging equipment is dry.
 - » Check that there is no water in the immediate area, and that your hands are dry.



Outlet needs to be in good shape. Worn or damaged outlet will not make good contact with the plug. Ensure that the plug is fully inserted and does not come out of the outlet after installation. A loose connection will cause excessive heat build up within the plug and damage it.

 WARNING

Using a charging outlet that is powering other devices can cause a fire, seriously injuring you or others.

When using charging equipment, use a dedicated and properly grounded circuit. Consult an electrician if you are unsure whether your outlet meets these criteria.

Charging the High Voltage battery under the following conditions is a potential source of electric shock and fire, which can result in serious injury or death:

- Charging the battery during an electric storm.
- Using charging equipment near water or handling with wet hands.
- Using charging equipment that has a broken or cracked case, or that has frayed or damaged cables.

Never charge the vehicle in any of the above situations.

Using charging equipment that is damaged or modified can cause electrical shock and fire, which can result in serious injury or death.

Never disassemble or modify charging equipment. If the charging equipment becomes damaged, stop using it and consult a dealer.

⚠ WARNING

Improper usage and handling of charging equipment can cause a fire, seriously injuring you or others.

- Always insert the plug fully into a properly rated and grounded wall outlet.
- Plug the charger directly into the wall outlet. Do not use extension cords, cord reels, or AC plug adapters.
- Prevent the vehicle charging connector from becoming contaminated. Clean if necessary.
- Do not use a generator to charge the vehicle.
- Make sure that no foreign objects have entered the charger or inlet.
- Do not submerge the AC plug or charging cable in water or any other liquid.
- Do not subject the charger to strong impact, submerge it in liquid, or insert foreign objects into the plug or charging connector.

About Charging

There are two ways to charge the High Voltage battery: by using the AC charger or DC charger.

Suggested charging time

AC 230V charging (Incase of 16 amp): About 8 hours (full charge)

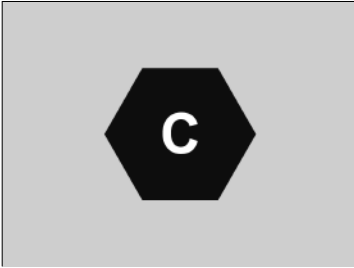
AC 230V charging (Incase of 30 amp^{*1}): About 4 hours (full charge)

CCS2 DC charging (Incase of 50kW, 125 amp^{*1}): About 30 minutes (80% charge)

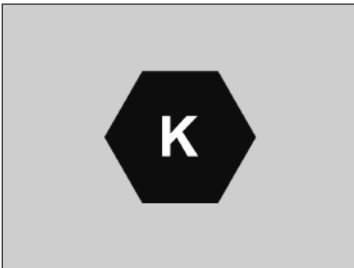
*1: Maximum chargeable value

- The above charging times are estimates assuming that charging began as soon as the low battery charge notification appeared on the gauge, at an ambient temperature of 25°C.
- Charging time varies depending on conditions such as the remaining battery level, the ambient temperature, and the charger being used.
- You can check the estimated full charging time on the gauge.
- If the charge lid is frozen and cannot be opened, apply lukewarm water to it to melt the ice. Then, thoroughly wipe off all moisture before opening the charge lid.
- If the charging cable has dirt or water droplets on it, wipe them off with a clean, dry cloth. Do not wash the cable with water or clean it using any chemical products.
- When the 12-volt battery is disconnected, vehicle charging is not possible. After reconnecting the 12-volt battery, turn the power system on, then turn it off. Confirm that charging is possible.

- Charging is still possible while the power mode is set to ON. However, the power mode will not automatically turn to OFF once charging stops. Since this may cause the 12-volt battery to deplete, turn the power mode OFF as soon as possible.
- You can charge the High Voltage battery while the power system is on and equipment such as the air conditioning and audio systems are in use; however, the charging time may become longer, or charging may not be completed.
- If a blackout or other electrical interruption occurs during vehicle charging, the vehicle will automatically resume charging once power is restored.
- If the outside temperature is below -20°C, the High Voltage battery may not start charging.
- While charging, sound may not be heard from the radio due to electromagnetic noise.
- Since the vehicle is charged with regenerative energy when you drive on a downward slope, regenerative braking may not be as effective when the vehicle is almost fully charged. When charging in a high place such as a mountain or hill, do not fully charge your vehicle.



- Charging equipment with this C mark identifier is compatible with AC charging.



- Charging equipment with this K mark identifier is compatible with DC charging.



Do not charge the vehicle with a vehicle cover on. It can cause a malfunction and damage the vehicle or charging components.

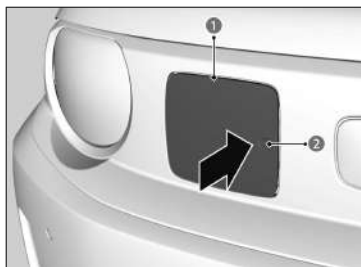
- ❗ To avoid damage to the inlet and charger, take these precautions:
 - » Do not hit the inlet and charging connector components with a hard object or drop them on the ground.
 - » Do not pull, twist, tangle, drag or step on the charging cable.
 - » Do not use or store near any sources of heat.
 - » Do not expose to liquids or use harsh chemicals to clean.

- ❗ To prevent damage to the charging connector or the inlet, insert the charging connector straight into the inlet. Also, do not apply excessive force to the charging connector after it has been connected.

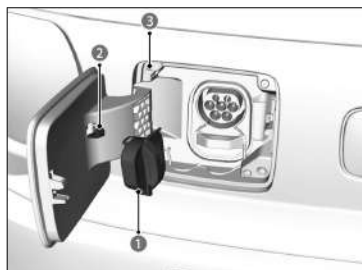
- ❗ If the inlet, AC plug, or charging cable are dirty, are otherwise contaminated, or have water droplets, carefully clean them with a dry, clean cloth before use. If you are unable to clean them, if the inlet is dirty, or if there is damage or corrosion, consult a dealer.

- ❗ Do not wipe the metal part of the inlet and the charging connector. Also, if you are unable to clean the plug or connector, if the inlet is dirty, or if any are damaged or corroded, consult a dealer.

How to Charge (AC 230 V)



- [1] Change the shift position to **P** and turn the power system off.
- [2] Unlock the driver's door.
 - » The charge lid (❶) on the outer side of the vehicle will unlock.
 - » If you carry a keyless remote, you can open the charge lid even if the doors are locked.
- [3] Press and release the area indicated by the arrow (❷) to release the charge lid. You will hear a click and the lid will open slightly.
- [4] Manually pull the charge lid to a fully open position.



- [5] Remove the upper cap (1).
- [6] Place upper cap on the hook (2).
- [7] Align and insert the charging connector into the vehicle's inlet securely.
 - » The charge indicator (white) (3) stops blinking, and changes to slow blinking (blue) on when charging starts.
 - » The charge indicator (blue) stops blinking once charging is completed. After about 15 seconds, the charge indicator goes off.

When charging is completed



Press the unlock button (1), and wait without touching the charging connector until you hear the actuation sound of the motor running. After confirming that the actuation sound of the motor has stopped, disengage the charging connector.

- » Make sure to close the caps before you close the charge lid.

- Ask a dealer for more details on purchasing or using a recommended charging cable.
- The charger requires a properly grounded and dedicated circuit that is protected by an overcurrent protection device (circuit breaker). We also recommend that a GFCI (ground-fault circuit interrupter) protected outlet be used to charge the vehicle. Follow the GFCI maker's installation instructions, or consult an electrician if you are not sure about installation requirements.
- Be sure to follow the instructions and safety precautions provided with the AC charging equipment.
- The charge speed slows down towards the completion of the battery charging.
- The charging connector can be disengaged when the doors are unlocked.
 - If the doors are locked, the charging connector cannot be disengaged unless you carry the keyless remote.
 - If you do not disengage it within 30 seconds of unlocking the doors, the charging connector will automatically relock.
- If the charging connector does not disengage, do not disengage it forcefully, and follow the procedures mentioned in the following page.

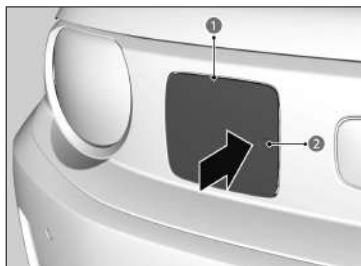
Q What to Do If Unable to Disengage the Charging Connector ► P.343

What to do when you cannot start charging

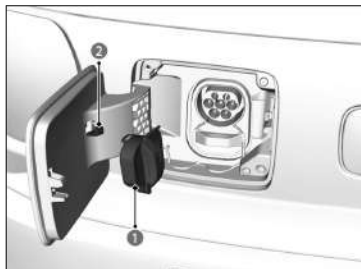
If charging does not start, check the following potential causes and take appropriate action:

- The charging connector is not properly connected.
 - » Reinsert the connector until it hits the back so that it does not tilt.
- The vehicle is malfunctioning.
 - » Check the gauge.
- The 12-volt battery voltage is low.
 - » Charge or replace the 12-volt battery.
- The temperature of the High Voltage battery is low.
 - » Charging is restricted to protect the High Voltage battery. Move the vehicle to a warmer location (e.g., by towing). Charging will become possible once the High Voltage battery temperature rises.
- Scheduled charging wait time (charge timer) is set.
 - » Charging will become possible once you turn off the setting.

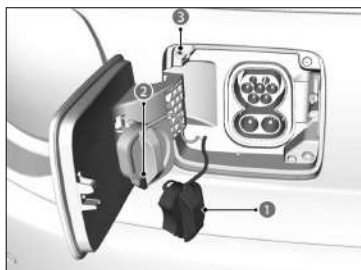
How to Charge (DC)



- [1] Change the shift position to **P** and turn the power system off.
- [2] Unlock the driver's door.
 - » The charge lid (1) on the outer side of the vehicle will unlock.
 - » If you carry a keyless remote, you can open the charge lid even if the doors are locked.
- [3] Press and release the area indicated by the arrow (2) to release the charge lid. You will hear a click and the lid will open slightly.
- [4] Manually pull the charge lid to a fully open position.

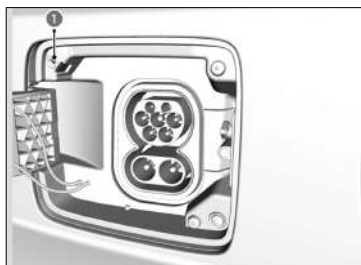


- [5] Remove the upper cap (1).
- [6] Place upper cap on the hook (2).



- [7] Remove the lower cap (1).
- [8] Hook lower cap onto the hook of upper cap (2).
- [9] Align and insert the charging connector into the vehicle's inlet securely.
 - » The charge indicator (white) (3) stops blinking, and changes to slow blinking (blue) on when charging starts.

When charging is completed



The charging connector to disengage it from the inlet. If the charging connector has a release button, press it to release the charging connector from the inlet.

» Make sure to close the caps before you close the charge lid.

The charge indicator (blue) (1) stops blinking once charging is completed. After about 15 seconds, the charge indicator goes off.

- The High Voltage battery may not charge depending on the charging station.
- Charging operations may vary depending on the type of DC charger equipment being used. To prevent damage to your vehicle or the DC charger equipment, be sure to follow the instructions and safety precautions provided with the DC charger equipment.
- Do not use any charging cables longer than 30 m (98.4 ft).
- The charge speed slows down towards the completion of the battery charging.
- Be sure to follow the instructions and safety precautions provided with the DC charger equipment.
- When you want to stop charging, follow the instructions for the use of the charger. Once the charging is stopped, you can release the charging connector.
- Values displayed on the charger, such as remaining charge time and High Voltage battery charge level, may differ from the actual values.

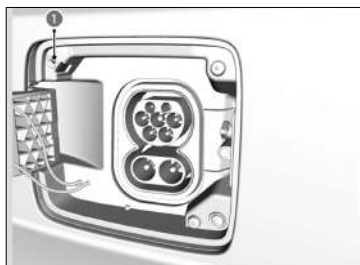
What to do when you cannot start charging

If charging does not start, check the following potential causes and take appropriate action:

- The DC charging connector is not properly connected.
 - » Connect the DC charging connector properly.
- The High Voltage battery is already close to a full charge.

- The DC charger is unable to charge.
 - » Make sure the DC charger is powered ON and confirm that it is functioning normally.
- The vehicle is malfunctioning.
 - » Check the gauge.
- The 12-volt battery voltage is low.
 - » Charge or replace the 12-volt battery.
- The temperature of the High Voltage battery is low.
 - » Charging is restricted to protect the High Voltage battery. Move the vehicle to a warmer location (e.g., by towing). Charging will become possible once the High Voltage battery temperature rises.

Charge Indicators on the Vehicle Side



The charge indicator (1) show the High Voltage battery charging status.

Blinks (white):

- The charger is ready to charge the battery.

Slow Blinks (blue):

- The battery is being charged.

Stays on (blue):

- Charging is complete.

Blinks (blue):

- The battery has been fully charged and systems such as the battery warming system have been activated.
- The climate control system is operating based on the settings in the smartphone app.

Blinks (red):

- There is a problem with the charging system.

Stays on (red):

- The charging connector not inserted correctly.
 - » When connecting the charging cable to the vehicle, insert the connector until it hits the back so that it does not tilt.
- Charging cannot be started after reconnecting the 12-volt battery.
 - » Start the power system once, then turn it off.

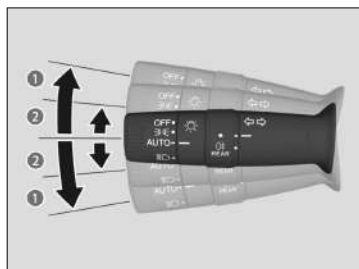
- Charging cannot be started because charging connectors are connected to both the AC charging inlet and the DC charging inlet.
- There is a malfunction in the vehicle.

Stays on (white):

- The charger's stop button is pressed.
- Charging is stopped by the charger timer.

Turn Signals/Light Switches

Turn Signals



Turn signal (1)

Push the lever up or down based on the direction you want to turn, and the turn signal will blink.

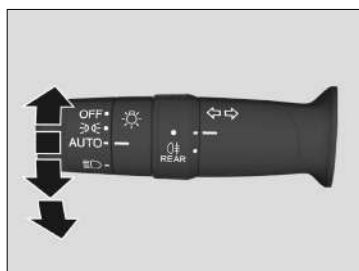
» The  turn signal indicator will blink when the external turn signal blinks.

One-touch turn signal (2)

When you lightly push the lever up or down and release it, the turn signal will blink three times.

» If you lightly push the lever in the opposite direction while it is blinking, the blinking will stop.

Headlights/Position Lights



The lights will turn on automatically depending on the ambient brightness.

They can also be switched on and off manually.

» The  lights on indicator in the instrument panel will turn on.

The exterior lights will switch on automatically when the light switch is set to **AUTO** while the power mode is in ON.

Manual Operation

Headlights/position lights:

Turn the light switch to .

Position lights:

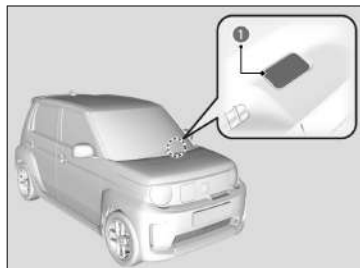
Turn the light switch to  until the position lights come on, then release.

Headlight/position lights off:

While the shift position is in **P** and the parking brake is applied, turn the light switch to **OFF** and then release once the lights turn off.

- The lights will come back on automatically when:
 - » The light switch is turned to **OFF** again and released.
 - » The shift position is changed out of **P** and the parking brake is released.

When the position lights are on, the tail and rear licence plate lights will also switch on.



The light sensor is positioned as indicated in the diagram.

Do not cover the light sensor.

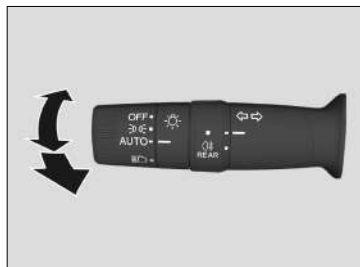
1 Light Sensor

! When the light switch is turned to  or  and the power is turned to OFF, a beeper sounds when the driver's door is opened.

! When the light switch is turned to **AUTO** and the ambient light levels are low, the headlights and position lights will switch on if you unlock a door. They will switch off when the door is locked.

! If you suspect that the headlights are not positioned properly, have the vehicle inspected by a dealer.

High Beams



When the headlights are on, push the lever forward.

Pull the lever back to return to low beams.

The  high beam indicator in the instrument panel will turn on when the high beams are on.

- Flashing the high beams: Pull the lever back, and release it.

Headlight Integration with Wipers

The headlights automatically come on when the wipers are used several times within a certain number of intervals with the headlight switch in **AUTO**.

The headlights automatically go off a few minutes later if the wipers are stopped.

This feature activates while the headlights are off in **AUTO**.

The instrument panel brightness does not change when the headlights come on.

At dark ambient light levels, the automatic lighting control feature turns on the headlights, regardless of the number of wiper sweeps.

Automatic Lighting Off Feature

The headlights, all other exterior lights, and the instrument panel lights turn off 15 seconds after you set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF, take the keyless remote with you, and close the driver's door.

However, when the switch is in , the position lights remain on.

If you set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF with the headlight switch on, but do not open the door, the lights turn off after 10 minutes (3 minutes, if the switch is in the **AUTO** position).

The lights turn on again when you unlock or open the driver's door.

If you unlock the door, but do not open it within 15 seconds, the lights go off.

If you open the driver's door, you will hear a reminder chime alerting you that the lights are on.

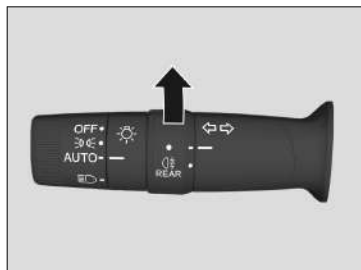


You can change the headlight auto off timer setting.

 Customized Features ► P.190

Rear Fog Lights

Can be used when the headlights are on.



■ To turn the rear fog light on

Rotate the switch to .

The  indicator comes on.

Daytime Running Lights

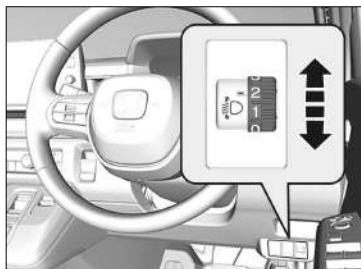
The position/daytime running lights comes on when the following conditions have been met:

- The power mode is in ON.
- The headlight switch is in **AUTO** or .
- The ambient light is bright.

To turn off the daytime running lights, turn the light switch to **OFF** while the vehicle is stopped, and then release once the lights turn off. When the transmission is changed out of **[P]** and the parking brake is released, the lights will come on again. Otherwise, if the light switch is once more turned to **OFF**, the lights will come on again.

The tail lights will also come on when the daytime running lights are on.

Headlight Adjuster



You can adjust the vertical angle of the low beam headlights when the position lights or headlights are on.

Turn the adjustment dial to select an appropriate angle for the headlights. The larger dial number indicates the lower angle.

- If you suspect that the headlights are not positioned properly, have the vehicle inspected by a dealer.

To select the adjusting dial position

Refer below for the appropriate dial position for your vehicle's riding and loading conditions.

0: A driver/A driver and a front passenger

1: Four persons in the front and rear seats

2: Four persons in the front and rear seats and luggage in the luggage area, within the limit of maximum permissible axle weight and maximum permissible vehicle weight

3: A driver and luggage in the luggage area, within the limits of maximum permissible axle weight and maximum permissible vehicle weight

Auto High-Beam

The front wide view camera detects the light sources ahead of the vehicle such as the lights of a preceding or oncoming vehicle, or street lights. When you are driving at night, the system automatically switches the headlights between low beam and high beam depending on the situation.

How to use the auto high-beam

Activating the system

When all of the following conditions have been met, the auto high-beam indicator comes on and automatically switches between the high beam and low beam, depending on the situation.



- The power mode is in ON.
- The light switch is in **AUTO**.
- The lever is in the low beam position.
- The headlights have been automatically activated.
- It is dark outside the vehicle.

① Auto High-Beam Indicator

② Light Switch

If the auto high-beam indicator does not come on even when all the conditions have been met, carry out either of the procedures below and the indicator will come on.

- Pull the lever towards you and release it.
- Turn the light switch to  then turn the light switch to **AUTO**.

The auto high-beam system does not always operate in every situation. This system is just for assisting the driver. Always observe your surroundings and manually switch the headlights between high beam and low beam if necessary.

The range and the distance at which the camera can recognise light sources varies depending on conditions surrounding your vehicle.

Regarding the handling of the camera mounted to the inside of the windscreen, refer to the following.

 Front Wide View Camera ▶P.212

For the auto high-beam to work properly:

- Do not place an object that reflects light on the dashboard.
- Keep the windscreen around the camera clean.

- When cleaning the windscreen, be careful not to apply the windscreen cleanser to the camera lens.
- Do not attach an object, sticker, or film to the area around the camera.
- Do not touch the camera lens.

If the camera receives a strong impact, or repairing of the area near the camera is required, consult a dealer.



How to turn off the Auto High-Beam System: You can turn the auto high-beam system on and off.

Customized Features ▶ P.190

If the **Some driver assist systems cannot operate: Camera temperature too high** message appears:

- Use the climate control system to cool down the interior and, if necessary, also use defroster mode with the airflow directed toward the camera.
- Start driving the vehicle to lower the windshield temperature, which cools down the area around the camera.

If the **Some driver assist system cannot operate: Clean front windscreen or poor viewing condition.** message appears:

- Park your vehicle in a safe place, and make sure the windshield is clean. Clean the windshield if it is dirty. If the message does not disappear after the vehicle has been driven for a while, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

In the following cases, the auto high-beam system may not switch the headlights properly or the switching timing may be changed. If the automatic switching operation does not fit your driving habits, please switch the headlights manually.

- The brightness of the lights from the preceding or oncoming vehicle is intense or poor.
- Visibility is poor due to the weather (rain, snow, fog, windscreen frost, etc.).
- Surrounding light sources like street lights, electric billboards, and traffic lights are illuminating the road ahead.
- The brightness level of the road ahead constantly changes.
- The road is bumpy or has many curves.
- A vehicle suddenly appears in front of you, or a vehicle in front of you is not in the preceding or oncoming direction.
- Your vehicle is tilted with a heavy load in the rear.
- A traffic sign, mirror, or other reflective object ahead is reflecting strong light towards the vehicle.
- The oncoming vehicle frequently disappears under roadside trees or behind median barriers.
- The preceding or oncoming vehicle is a motorcycle, bicycle, mobility scooter, or other small vehicle.

The auto high-beam system keeps the headlight low beam on when:

- Windscreen wipers are operating at a high speed.
- The camera has detected a dense fog.

Automatic switching between high-beam and low-beam

When the auto high-beam indicator comes on, the headlights switch between high beam and low beam based on the following conditions.

High beam

All of the following conditions must be met before the high beams turn on.

- Your vehicle speed is 40 km/h (25 mph) or more.
- There are no preceding or oncoming vehicles with headlights or taillights turned on.
- There are few street lights on the road ahead.

Low beam

One of the following conditions must be met before the low beams turn on.

- Your vehicle speed is 24 km/h (15 mph) or less.
- There is a preceding or oncoming vehicle with headlights or taillights turned on.
- There are many street lights on the road ahead.

Manual switching between high-beam and low-beam

If you want to manually switch the headlights between high beam and low beam, follow either of the procedures below. Note that when you do this, the auto high-beam indicator will turn off and the auto high-beam will be deactivated.

Using the lever:

Pull the lever towards you for flashing the high beams then release it.

» To reactivate the auto high-beam, follow either of the procedures below and the auto high-beam indicator will come on.

- Pull the lever towards you and release it.
- Turn the light switch to  and then to **AUTO** when the lever is in the low beam position.

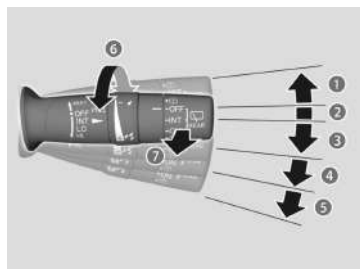
Using the light switch:

Turn the light switch to .

» To reactivate the auto high-beam, turn the light switch to **AUTO** when the lever is in the low beam position, and the auto high-beam indicator will come on.

Wipers and Washers

Windscreen Wipers/Washers



1 MIST

The wipers run at high speed until you release the lever.

2 OFF

3 INT

Low speed with intermittent

4 LO

Low speed wipe

5 HI

High speed wipe

6 Intermittent Time Adjustment Ring

Turn the adjustment ring to adjust the wiper operation.

 : Lower speed, fewer sweeps

 : Higher speed, more sweeps

7 Pull to use washer

Sprays while you pull the lever towards you.

When you release the lever for more than one second, the spray stops, the wipers sweep two or three more times to clear the windscreen, and then stop.

- If the vehicle speeds up while the wipers are operating intermittently, the length of the wipe interval shortens.
- When the vehicle speeds up, the wiper operation's shortest delay setting  and the **LO** setting become the same.

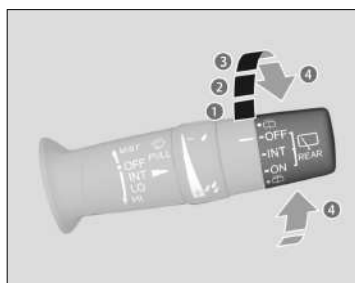
CAUTION

In freezing weather, do not use the washer until the windshield is warmed. Otherwise the washer fluid can form ice on the windshield, blocking your vision.

! Do not use the wipers when the windscreen is dry. The windscreen will get scratched, or the rubber blades will get damaged.

! Turn the washers off if no washer fluid comes out. The pump may get damaged.

Rear Wiper/Washer



- 1 OFF
- 2 INT (Intermittent)
- 3 ON (Continuous wipe)
- 4 Washer

Sprays while you rotate the switch to this position. Hold it to activate the rear wiper and to spray the washer.

Once released, the washer spray will stop and the rear wiper will return to its selected switch setting after a few sweeps.

- When you change the transmission to **R** with the windscreen wipers activated, the rear wiper operates automatically even if its switch is off.

What to Do If

When the wipers are not moving

The wiper motor may stop temporarily to prevent an overload. Wiper operation will return to normal within a few minutes.

When the wiper blades are stuck to the windscreen glass due to freezing in cold weather

In cold weather, the blades may freeze to the windscreen.

Operating the wipers in this condition may damage the wipers. Use the demister to warm the windscreen, then turn the wipers on.

[Q Defrosting the Windscreen and Windows](#) ▶ P.128

■ When snow has accumulated on the wipers

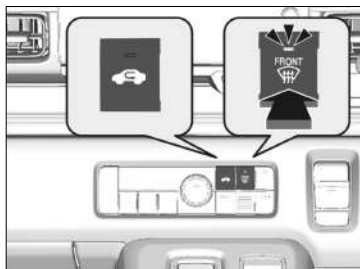
If the wipers stop operating due to an obstacle such as the buildup of snow, park the vehicle in a safe place.

Rotate the wiper switch to **OFF**, set the power mode to ACCESSORY or VEHICLE OFF, then remove the obstacle.

Defroster

Defrosting the Windscreen and Windows

When defogging the front or side windows



Pressing the  button turns the air conditioning system on and automatically switches the system to fresh air mode.

Press the  button again to turn off, and the system returns to the previous settings.

Rear demister button



Press the rear demister button to demist the rear window when the power mode is in ON.

The rear demister automatically switches off after 10-30 minutes, depending on the outside temperature. However, if the outside temperature is 0°C or below, it does not automatically switch off.

 For your safety, make sure you have a clear view through all the windows before driving.

 After defrosting the windows, switch over to fresh air mode. If you keep the system in recirculation mode, the windows may fog up from humidity. This impedes visibility.

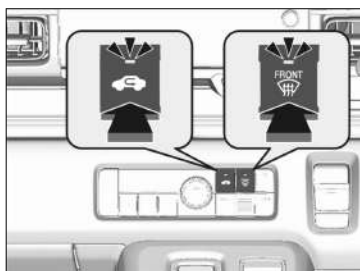
- ! Do not set the temperature near the upper or lower limit.
When cold air hits the windscreen, the outside of the windscreen may fog up.

- ! This system consumes a lot of power, so turn it off when the window has been demisted.

- ! This may weaken the battery, making it difficult to turn the power system on.

What to Do If

To rapidly defrost the windows



- [1] Press the  button.
- [2] Press the  button (indicator on).

When the side window gets fogged up

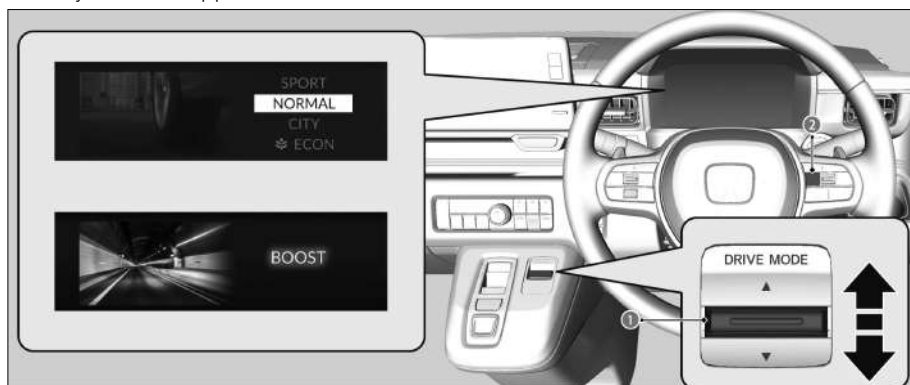
Adjust the nearest climate control vent so that it blows directly on the side window.

Driving Features

Drive Mode System

Selecting the Drive Mode

Press the **DRIVE MODE** switch (1) or **BOOST** switch (2) to select a mode. The mode you select appears on the driver information interface.



The mode may not be able to be changed under some driving conditions. If there is a vehicle system failure, a message will also appear on the driver information interface, and you cannot change the mode.

ECON Mode

Facilitates energy-efficient driving.

» Saves energy by slowing acceleration and limiting the climate control system's output.

CITY Mode

Optimises the balance between controllability and comfort.

Single pedal control is turned on.

NORMAL Mode

Optimises the balance between controllability and comfort.

SPORT Mode

Enhances responsiveness to the driver's input. This feature simulates the sounds and sensations of driving a vehicle with a transmission system.

Q How SPORT and BOOST Modes Operate ▶P.131

BOOST Mode

Maximises torque. This feature simulates the sounds and sensations of driving a vehicle with a transmission system.

Q How SPORT and BOOST Modes Operate ▶P.131

Next Start-Up Mode

The mode for the next start-up is saved according to the following chart. Each keyless remote has its own mode saved.

Last Mode	Next Mode
ECON	ECON
CITY	CITY
NORMAL	NORMAL
SPORT	SPORT
BOOST	Last mode that was selected before BOOST

How SPORT and BOOST Modes Operate



When the drive mode is in **SPORT** or **BOOST** mode, the system simulates the sounds and sensations of driving a vehicle with a transmission system.

At this time, the gauge display changes and the simulated gear level (1) is shown on the gauge.

Q Drive Mode System ▶P.130

- Depending on the brake pad temperature or the charge status of the High Voltage battery, the feeling of acceleration or the simulated sensations of driving a vehicle with a transmission system may be reduced.

Paddle shifter



1 Pull back on **-**

» Gear level decreases by 1.

2 Pull back on **+**

» Gear level increases by 1.

While **SPORT** or **BOOST** mode is on, you can pull back on the **+** paddle to increase the gear level by 1, or pull back on the **-** paddle to decrease the gear level by 1.

You can pull the **+** paddle back for a few seconds to switch to having the gear level change automatically.

You can pull the **-** paddle back for a few seconds to switch back to having the gear level need to be changed manually.

Deceleration Paddle Selector

You can use the paddles on the steering wheel to change the rate of deceleration (between six stages) when you release the accelerator pedal. When descending a hill, you can use the deceleration paddle selector to help maintain the rate of deceleration, thereby allowing you to keep a safe distance between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead.

This feature can be used if the drive mode is set to **NORMAL** or **ECON** mode.

Drive Mode System ► P.130

WARNING

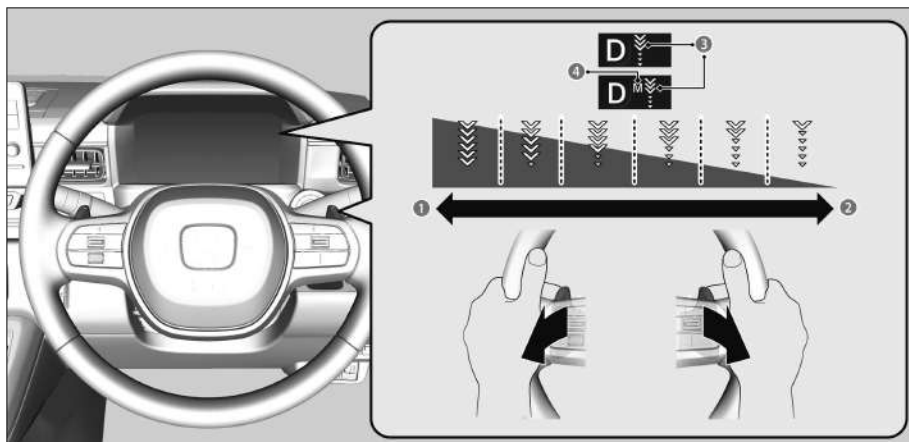
Increasing the deceleration rate by quickly shifting the deceleration paddle selector can cause the tyres to skid, resulting in a crash that could injure or kill someone.

Always maintain a reasonable rate of deceleration.

How to Operate the Deceleration Paddle Selector

Each paddle operation changes the deceleration level by 1.

- » The deceleration rate only changes by one level even if you keep the paddle pulled back.
- » If you pull back the right and left paddle selector at the same time, the deceleration level may not change.



1 Pull back on the paddle (left side)

» Rate of deceleration increases.

2 Pull back on the paddle (right side)

» Rate of deceleration decreases.

3 Deceleration Paddle Selector Indicator: Shows the rate of deceleration.

4 M display: Appears when the rate of deceleration is fixed.

Using the deceleration paddle selector

The deceleration paddle selector indicator comes on when you pull back on the paddle while the shift position is in **D**.

» If you pull back on the paddle, the rate of deceleration is set to level 3.

» If you pull back on the paddle, the rate of deceleration is set to level 1.

When you decelerate to a full stop or press down on the accelerator, the deceleration paddle selector is automatically cancelled, and the deceleration paddle selector indicator goes off.

Using the paddle selector with a fixed rate of deceleration

If you keep the paddle pulled back, the **M** display and the deceleration paddle selector indicator appear, and you can use the deceleration paddle selector with a fixed setting.

To unlock the fixed deceleration paddle selector, pull and hold back the paddle.

Deceleration Paddle Selector Limitations

In the following situations, the display will blink and the rate of deceleration will not change even if you pull back on the paddle.

Additionally, the number of selectable deceleration levels may be reduced, the rate of deceleration may automatically decrease, and this function may be cancelled.

- Power system protection is needed.
- The vehicle accelerates/decelerates repeatedly.
- The vehicle is on a long downward slope.
- When driving for a long time with a heavy load.
- When the brake system indicator (amber) comes on.

Single Pedal Control

Allows you to control acceleration and deceleration, as well as keep the vehicle stationary by using the accelerator pedal.

This feature turns on when the drive mode is switched to **CITY** mode.

 Drive Mode System ▶ P.130

- » The  single pedal indicator (green) comes on in the gauge when Single Pedal Control is on.
- » Even if you switch from **CITY** mode to another mode while the vehicle is stopped in Single Pedal Control, the vehicle will remain stopped at that time only.
- » This system cannot be used if the parking brake and brake system indicator (amber) comes on when you repeatedly accelerate and decelerate, descend a long slope, or drive for a long time with a heavy load.

WARNING

Single Pedal Control is an auxiliary system for deceleration.

If the vehicle begins to move while stopped, the deceleration is not enough, or a warning to depress the brake pedal displays on the gauge, depress the brake pedal immediately.

Overreliance on this function when driving may result in a crash and serious injury or death.

Carefully check your surroundings and operate your vehicle safely.

Do not leave the vehicle while the vehicle is stopped by the system.

If a vehicle moves unexpectedly, it may cause a crash, resulting in serious injury or even death. When parking, change the shift position to **P** and engage the parking brake.

⚠ WARNING

Do not remove your foot from the brake pedal on steep slopes or slippery surfaces.

On steep slopes and slippery surfaces, the car may move if you remove your foot from the brake, even if Single Pedal Control is in use.

If a vehicle moves unexpectedly, it may cause a crash, resulting in serious injury or even death.



When stopping for a long time to let people get in and out of the vehicle, or load or unload luggage from the vehicle, change the shift position to **P**.

Automatic Shutoff

Under the following conditions, the system will be temporarily cancelled, and the single pedal indicator will change from green to gray. Once these conditions no longer exist, the system automatically resumes. 

- Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow has been activated.
- The driver's seat belt is unfastened while driving (will turn off when the brake pedal is depressed after parking).
- The driver's seat belt is unfastened while the vehicle is stopped.

Under the following conditions, the system will be automatically cancelled, and the  single pedal indicator will turn off. In this case, switch to a mode other than **CITY** mode once, and then switch it back to **CITY** mode. Once these conditions no longer exist, the system automatically resumes.

- The vehicle is on a slippery slope or the vehicle has skidded.
- The vehicle accelerates/decelerates repeatedly.
- The vehicle is on a long downward slope.
- When driving for a long time with a heavy load.
- When using a vehicle turntable.
- The parking brake and brake system indicator (amber) comes on while driving.
- The power mode is set to VEHICLE OFF while the vehicle is stopped.*1
- The parking brake and brake system indicator (amber) is on while the vehicle is stopped.*1
- The vehicle slides down significantly due to a slope while the vehicle is stopped.*1

*1: In this case, the parking brake will be applied automatically.

System Operation

Using the accelerator pedal, you can adjust the speed of the vehicle while moving forwards or backwards.

If you let up on the accelerator, the vehicle will slow down until it comes to a stop, and it will remain stationary after stopping. If you press the accelerator pedal, the vehicle will start moving.

The automatic brake hold indicator comes on while the vehicle is stopped.

» If the vehicle is stopped for 10 minutes or more, the parking brake will be automatically applied.

- When the vehicle does not decelerate enough even if you release the accelerator pedal, depress the brake pedal.
- You can change the deceleration rate by using the paddle on the steering wheel. The deceleration rate can be changed in four stages.
- When the system is ON, the vehicle will not creep.
- When using the system, just like with foot brakes or other regenerative brakes, there will be wear on the brake pads.

CAUTION

Be careful when adjusting the deceleration rate.

Depending on the deceleration rate, the tyres may skid on slippery surfaces.



If  (amber) is displayed, there may be a problem with the system. Have your vehicle inspected by a dealer immediately.

Acoustic Vehicle Alerting System

This system makes a sound to alert people that your vehicle is nearby when you are driving at a speed of about 25 km/h (16 mph) or less.

Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System

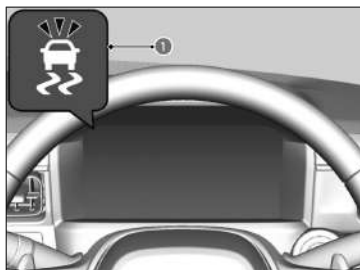
VSA helps to stabilise the vehicle during cornering if the vehicle turns more or less than what was intended. It also assists in maintaining traction on slippery surfaces. It does so by regulating propulsion output and selectively applying the brakes.

- » The main function of the VSA system is generally known as Electronic Stability Control (ESC). The system also includes a traction control function.

! VSA cannot enhance stability in all driving situations and does not control the entire braking system. You still need to drive and corner at speeds appropriate for the conditions and always leave a sufficient margin of safety.

! The VSA may not function properly if tyre type and size are mixed. Make sure to use the same size and type of tyre, and the air pressures as specified.

VSA Operation



When VSA activates, the VSA system indicator **(1)** will also blink.

- » The motor may not respond to the accelerator.
» You may also notice some noise from the brake system.

! When the VSA system indicator comes on and stays on while driving, there may be a problem with the system. While this may not interfere with normal driving, have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately.

VSA On and Off



You can partially disable VSA features using the driver information interface.

The traction control function becomes less effective. This allows for the wheels to spin more freely at low speed.

Switching the Display ►P.271

VSA Mode ►P.279

1 VSA OFF Indicator

Even if the system is turned off, it will automatically turn on every time the power mode is turned on.



We do not recommend driving your vehicle with the VSA system switched off.

In certain unusual conditions when your vehicle gets stuck in shallow mud or fresh snow, it may be easier to free it with the VSA temporarily switched off. Immediately after freeing your vehicle, be sure to switch VSA on again.

Agile Handling Assist

Lightly brakes as needed when you turn the steering wheel, and helps support the vehicle's stability and performance during cornering.

- When the VSA system indicator comes on and stays on while driving, the agile handling assist does not activate.
- You may hear an operating noise while the agile handling assist is activated.



The agile handling assist cannot enhance stability in all driving situations. You still need to drive and corner at speeds appropriate for the conditions and always leave a sufficient margin of safety.

Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)



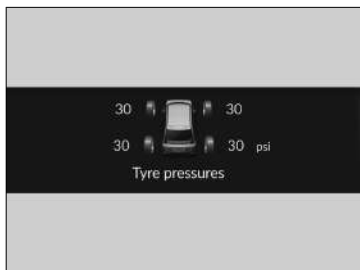
Monitors the tyre pressure while you are driving. If your vehicle's tyre pressure becomes significantly low, the Low Tyre Pressure/TPMS indicator (1) comes on and a message (2) appears.

- Only use genuine TPMS specified wheels since your vehicle's wheels are equipped with the low tyre pressure/TPMS sensor. If you drive your vehicle without the genuine TPMS specified wheels, the low tyre pressure/TPMS indicator blinks for one minutes and then stays on.

Q Tyre and Wheel Replacement ▶ P.297

- Conditions such as low ambient temperature and altitude change directly affect tyre pressure and can trigger the low tyre pressure/TPMS indicator to come on.
- Tyres can become under-inflated in colder weather.
- Tyres can become overinflated in warmer weather.
- The low tyre pressure/TPMS indicator will not come on as a result of overinflation.
- **Tyre pressure monitor system problem** message may appear if you drive with a tyre not equipped with a TPMS sensor, or if there is a problem with the system.
- The pressure displayed on the driver information interface can be slightly different from the actual pressure as measured by a gauge. If there is a significant difference between the two values, or if the Low Tyre Pressure/TPMS indicator and the message on the driver information interface do not go off after you have inflated the tyre to the specified pressure, have the system checked by a dealer.

Tyre Pressure Monitor



To select the tire pressure monitor, set the power mode to ON, and roll the right selector wheel until you see the tire pressure screen.

» The pressure for each tire is displayed in **psi**.

Q Switching the Display ▶ P.271

Controls

Interior Lights

Interior Light Switches	141
Map Light Switches	142

Interior Convenience Items

Glove Box	143
Accessory Power Socket	143
Beverage Holders	144
Under-Floor Storage Area	146

Seat Heaters

Using the Front seat Heater	147
-----------------------------	-----

Heated Steering Wheel

Using the Heated Steering Wheel	148
---------------------------------	-----

Climate Control System

Automatic Climate Control System	149
Using Automatic Climate Control	150

In-Vehicle Infotainment

About Your In-Vehicle Infotainment	153
Audio System Basic Operation	153
USB Ports	155
Audio Remote Controls	156
Connecting a Device	157
About System Updates	160

Display Audio Basic Operations

Start Up	161
Reboot Audio	161
Home Screen	162
System Updates	163
Trip Computer	164
Clock	165
Adjusting the Sound	167
Changing the Display Settings	167
Playing the Radio	168
Playing DAB (Digital Audio Broadcasting)	170
About Media Playback	171

User Information	177
------------------	-----

Display Audio Other Operations

Wi-Fi Connection	180
Apple CarPlay	181
Android Auto™	183
Hands-Free Telephone System	184

Display Audio Customized Features

Customized Features	190
---------------------	-----

General Information on the Audio System

Compatible iPod, iPhone, and USB Flash Drives	198
About Open Source Licences	202
Licence Information	202
Legal Information on Apple CarPlay/Android Auto	204

Interior Lights

Interior Light Switches

Front



① : ON

The interior lights are always on.

② : Door activated

The interior lights come on in the following situations:

- Any door or tailgate is opened
- The driver's door is unlocked
- The power mode is set to OFF

OFF: (Neither of ON position nor door activated position is on.)

The interior lights remain off regardless of whether the tailgate or any doors are open or closed.

Rear



① : ON

The interior light is always on.

② : OFF

The interior light is always off.

③ : Door activated

The interior light comes on in the following situations:

- Any door or tailgate is opened
- The driver's door is unlocked
- The power mode is set to OFF

- In the door activated position, the interior lights turn off about 30 seconds after the doors are closed. When you unlock the driver's door but do not open it, the lights turn off after about 30 seconds.
- If you leave any of the doors or tailgate open in VEHICLE OFF mode, the interior lights turn off after about 15 minutes.



You can change the interior light's dimming time.

Customized Features P.190

Do not leave the interior lights on for a long time when parking, etc., as it may drain the 12 V battery.

Map Light Switches

This light is used for situations such as viewing a map at night while your vehicle is stopped.

Front seat



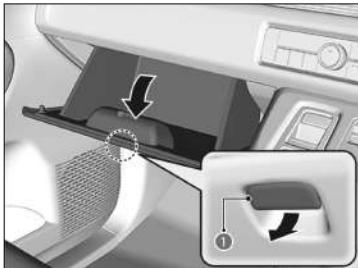
The map lights can be turned on and off by touching the map lights.

The map lights can not turn off in the following situations:

- The interior lights are on.
- Any door is opened when the interior lights are on in the door activated position.

Interior Convenience Items

Glove Box



Pull the handle to open the glove box.

① Handle

WARNING

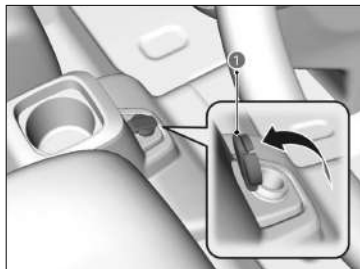
An open glove box can cause serious injury to your passenger in a crash, even if the passenger is wearing the seat belt. Always keep the glove box closed while driving.

Accessory Power Socket

The accessory power socket can be used when the power mode is in ACCESSORY or ON. Open the cover to use it.

The accessory power socket is designed to supply power for 12-volt DC accessories that are rated 180 watts (15 amps) or less.

Centre console



1 Cover

- ! Do not insert an automotive-type cigarette lighter element. This can overheat the accessory power socket.

- ! To prevent 12-volt battery drain, only use the accessory power socket with the power system on.

- ! When the accessory power socket is not in use, close the cover to prevent any small foreign objects from getting into the accessory power socket.

Beverage Holders

Spilled liquids can damage the upholstery, carpeting, and electrical components in the interior.

Front seat beverage holders



Located on driver side of the front panel.

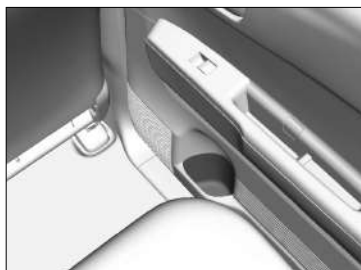


Located in the console between the front seats.



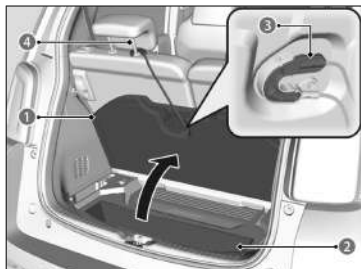
Located on both of the front door side pockets.

Rear seat beverage holders



Located on both of the rear door side pockets.

Under-Floor Storage Area



Pull up the luggage area floor lid.

» Hanging the hook on the head restraint pillar allows the cargo lid to remain upright.

- 1 Floor Lid
- 2 Under-Floor Storage Area
- 3 Hook
- 4 Head restraint pillar

WARNING

Do not pull out or push in parcels while driving.

This may cause unforeseeable accident or injury at sudden braking.

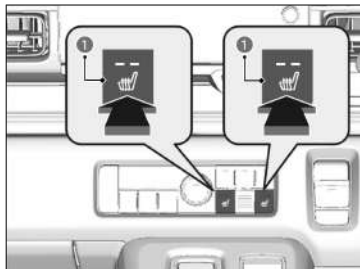
Do not drive with the lid upright.

This may cause unforeseeable accident or injury at sudden braking.

Seat Heaters

Using the Front seat Heater

The seat heaters can be used when the power mode is in ON.



Press the seat heater button:

Once - The HI setting (two indicators on)

Twice - The LO setting (one indicator on)

Three times - The OFF setting (no indicators on)

3

Controls

1 Seat Heater Button

- When the power mode is turned on after it is turned off, the previous setting is maintained.

When the ECON mode is turned on, the driver's side seat heater functions may automatically activate depending on the operating status of the climate control system. If you want to use only the climate control system, press the seat heater button to set it to OFF.

WARNING

Heat induced burns are possible when using seat heaters.

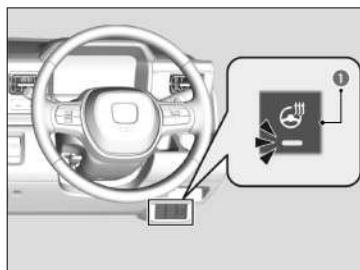
Persons with a diminished ability to sense temperature (e.g., persons with diabetes, lower limb nerve damage, or paralysis) or with sensitive skin should not use seat heaters.



Do not use the seat heaters even in LO when the power system is off. Under such conditions, the 12-volt battery may be weakened, making the power system difficult to start.

Heated Steering Wheel

Using the Heated Steering Wheel



The heated steering wheel can be used when the power mode is in ON.

When you press the button, the indicator comes on and the steering wheel heats up. Press the button again to turn it off.

1 Heated Steering Wheel Button

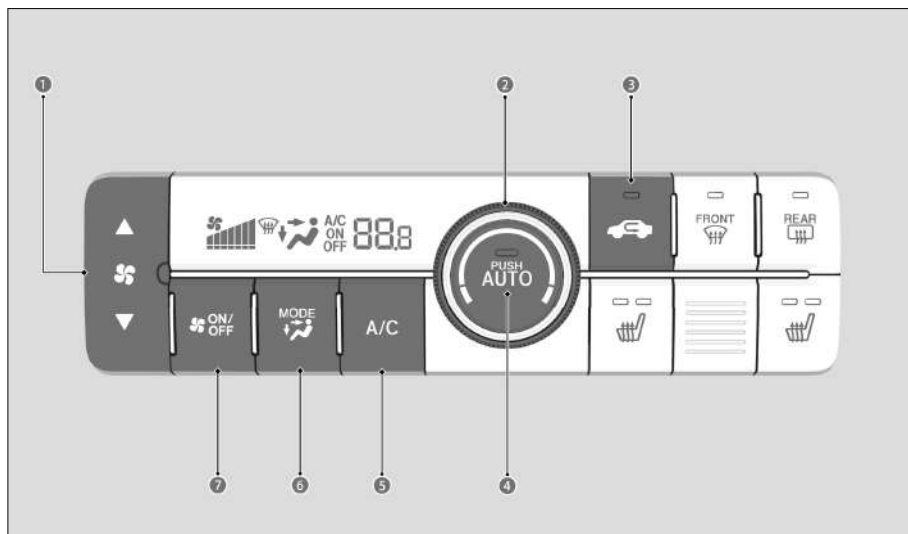
When the power mode is turned on after it is turned off, the previous setting is maintained.

! Do not use the heated steering wheel continuously when the power system is off. Under such conditions, the 12-volt battery may be weakened, making the power system difficult to start.

Climate Control System

Automatic Climate Control System

Explanations of Switches



1 Fan Control Button

Adjusts the fan speed.

2 Temperature Control Dial

Adjusts the interior temperature.

3 (Recirculation) Button

Switch Recirculation mode/Fresh air mode.

- Recirculation (indicator light on):

Recirculates air from the vehicle's interior through the system.

- Fresh air (indicator light off):

Maintains outside ventilation. Keep the system in fresh air mode in normal situations.

4 AUTO Button

Switch to automatic control.

5 A/C (Air Conditioning) Button

Switch ON/OFF of cooling/dehumidification function.

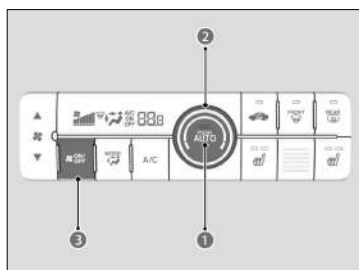
6 MODE Control Button

-  Dashboard vents
-  Dashboard and floor vents
-  Floor vents
-  Floor and windscreen demister vents

7 (ON/OFF) Button

Switch ON/OFF of the climate control system.

Using Automatic Climate Control



The automatic climate control system maintains the interior temperature you select. The system also selects the proper mix of heated or cooled air that raises or lowers the interior temperature to your preference as quickly as possible.

Use the system when the power system is on.

- [1] Press the **AUTO** button.
- [2] Adjust the interior temperature using the temperature control dial.
- [3] Press the  (**ON/OFF**) button to cancel.

1 AUTO Button

2 Temperature Control Dial

3 (ON/OFF) Button

- If any buttons are pressed while using the climate control system in auto, the function of the button that was pressed will take priority. The **AUTO** indicator will go off, but functions unrelated to the button that was pressed will be controlled automatically.
- To prevent cold air from blowing in from outside, the fan may not start immediately when the **AUTO** button is pressed.

Switching between the recirculation and fresh air modes

Select the  (recirculation) icon and switch the mode depending on environmental conditions.

Recirculation mode (indicator on): Recirculates air from the vehicle's interior through the system.

Fresh air mode (indicator off): Maintains outside ventilation. Keep the system in fresh air mode in normal situations.

Dehumidifying Heating

When the climate control system is set to AUTO, the dehumidifying heating mode will activate automatically.

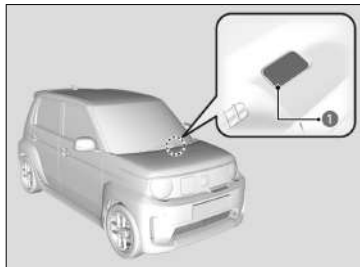
When the climate control system is not set to AUTO, press the **A/C** (Air Conditioning) button while using the heater to activate dehumidifying heating mode.

- Pressing the  (**ON/OFF**) button switches the climate control system between on and off. When turned on, the system returns to your last selection.
- The climate control system may become weaker when the high voltage battery is low. When ECON mode is ON, “Ec.0” is displayed in the set temperature display.
- If the windows fog up in ECON mode, we recommend setting the temperature to 25.0°C or higher.
- The climate control system may become weaker while driving. If you operate the **AUTO** button,  button, or change the air conditioner temperature setting, only the air conditioner will return to normal control.

 ECON Mode ▶ P.130

 If the interior is very warm, you can cool it down more rapidly by partially opening the windows, turning the system on auto, and setting the temperature to low. Change the fresh air mode to recirculation mode until the temperature cools down.

Automatic Climate Control Sensors



The automatic climate control system is equipped with sensors. Do not cover or spill any liquid on them.

1 Sensor



1 Sensor

In-Vehicle Infotainment

About Your In-Vehicle Infotainment

The audio system features AM/FM radio and Digital Audio Broadcasting (DAB) service. It can also play USB flash drives, iPod, iPhone, smartphones, and *Bluetooth*® devices. You can operate the audio system from the buttons and knob on the panel, the remote controls on the steering wheel, or the icons on the touchscreen interface.

» To use this system, the power mode must be in ACCESSORY or ON.

Audio System Theft Protection

The audio system is disabled when it is disconnected from the power source, such as when the 12-volt battery is disconnected or goes dead. In certain conditions, the system may display a code entry screen. If this occurs, reactivate the audio system.

Reactivating the audio system

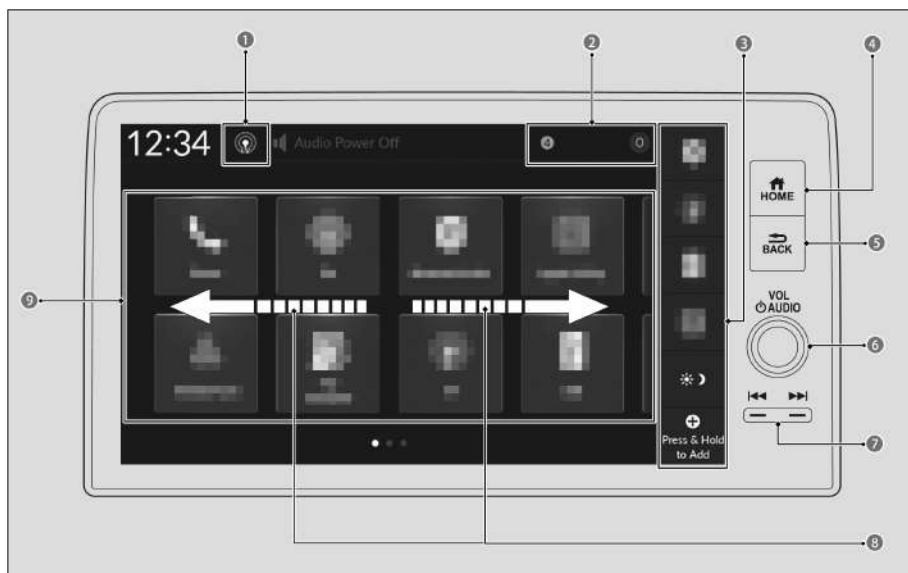
- [1] Startup animation starts in the audio system by opening the door.
 - [2] Press and hold the **VOL/**  **AUDIO** (volume/power) knob for more than two seconds.
 - [3] Set the power mode to ON.
- » The audio system is reactivated when the audio control unit establishes a connection with the vehicle control unit. If the control unit fails to recognize the audio unit, you must go to a dealer and have the audio unit checked.

Audio System Basic Operation

Audio System Basic Operation With Display Audio

Swiping the screen left or right changes to the next screen.

Press the  (Home) button to go directly back to the first page of the home screen from any page.



- 1 Audio Source Icon
- 2 Status Bar
- 3 Mode Change Switch Bar
- 4 (Home) Button
- 5 (Back) Button
- 6 **VOL/ AUDIO** (Volume/Power) Knob
- 7 (Seek/Skip) Button
- 8 Swipe
- 9 App Icons

Touchscreen operation

- Use simple gestures – including touching, swiping, and scrolling - to operate certain audio functions.
- Some items may be greyed-out during driving to reduce the potential for distraction. You can select them when the vehicle is stopped.
- Wearing gloves may limit or prevent touchscreen response.



You can change the touchscreen sensitivity setting.

[How to Customize the General Settings](#) ▶ P.190

Selecting an audio source

Select audio source icon in the header area, then select an icon on the source list to switch the audio source.

System status

Displays information about your vehicle, connected devices, etc. You can select the status bar to view more details in the status area.

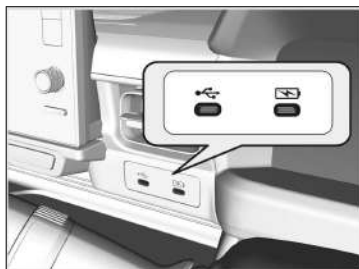
Mode change switch bar

You can also select any application from the mode change switch bar. Shortcuts can be edited to open other applications.

 Home Screen  P.162

USB Ports

On the instrument panel



USB charging/connector port ()

The USB port is for charging devices, playing audio files, and connecting compatible phones with Android Auto or Apple CarPlay.

» To prevent any potential issues, be sure to use an Apple MFi Certified Lightning Connector for Apple CarPlay. USB cables should be certified by USB-IF to be compliant with USB 2.0 Standard.

USB charging port ()

The USB port is only for charging devices.

» You cannot play audio files even if an audio device is connected.

- We recommend backing up your data before using the device in your vehicle.
- Messages displayed on the Audio System may vary depending on the device model and software version.
- Some devices may not work even if they are connected to the USB ports.

Supplementary information about USB Charging:

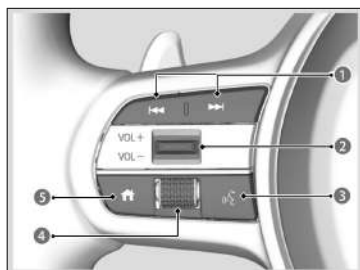
- The USB port supports USB Power Delivery.
- USB standard output
When using 1 port: 5V/3A (15W), 9V/3A (27W), 15V/3A (45W), 20V/3A(60W)
When using both ports: 5V/3A(15W), 9V/3A(27W), 15V/3A(45W), Max 60W in total
For amperage details, read the operating manual of the device that needs to be charged.
- The USB port also supports PPS (Programmable Power Supply). PPS 5.0V-21V (Max 60W).
- Charging may not start or may operate slowly depending on the connected devices and cables. Using only one port while not connecting anything (including cables) to the other port may solve the issue.

❗ Do not leave the device or USB flash drive in the vehicle. Direct sunlight and high temperatures may damage it.

❗ Do not connect the device or USB flash drive using a hub, as they will not operate if you do.

❗ Do not use a device such as a card reader or hard disk drive, as the device or your files may be damaged.

Audio Remote Controls



Allows you to operate the audio system while driving. The information is shown on the driver information interface.

- ❶ (Seek/Skip) Buttons
- ❷ **VOL** (Volume) Switch
- ❸ (Talk) Button
- ❹ Left Selector Wheel
- ❺ (home) Button

❗ Depending on the device you connect, some functions may not be available.

Seek/Skip Buttons

- When listening to the radio
 - Press**  : To select the next preset radio station.
 - Press**  : To select the previous preset radio station.
 - Press and hold**  : To select the next strong station.
 - Press and hold**  : To select the previous strong station.
- When listening to a wired connection, USB flash drive, *Bluetooth*® Audio, or Smartphone Connection
 - » Depending on a connected device, operations may be changed.
 - Press**  : To skip to the next song.
 - Press**  : To go back to the beginning of the current or previous song.
- When listening to a USB flash drive
 - Press and hold**  : To skip to the next folder.
 - Press and hold**  : To go back to the previous folder.
- When listening to a wired connection or *Bluetooth*® Audio
 - Press and hold**  : To fast forward a song.
 - Press and hold**  : To rewind a song.

VOL /VOL (Volume) Switch

Press Up: To increase the volume.

Press Down: To decrease the volume.

Left Selector Wheel

To switch between audio modes, roll up or down and then press the left selector wheel.

Connecting a Device

With a connected device you can play various files, as well as use Apple CarPlay or Android Auto on the audio/information screen.

» Depending on the app used, device battery may decrease even with a wired connection.

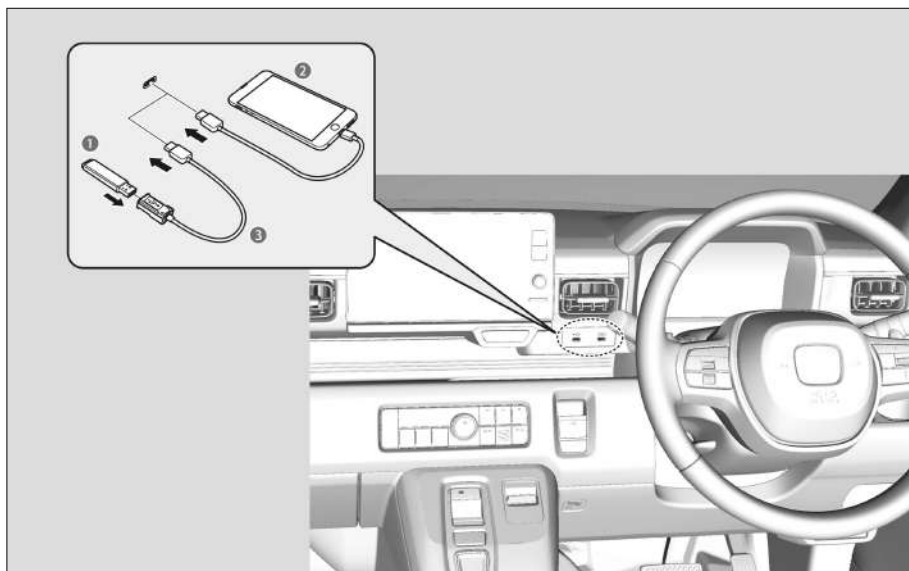


Always make sure your vehicle is parked in a safe location before connecting a device.

About Wired Connections

Connect a device or USB flash drive to the USB charging/connector port ().

» You may need to operate the device.



① USB Flash Drive

② Device

③ USB Cable

About Wireless Connections

You can modify *Bluetooth*® function settings.

Once you have paired a device, you can see it displayed on the screen with one or more of the following icons indicating available features:

 : The device is compatible with *Bluetooth*® Audio and HFT.

 : The device is compatible with Apple CarPlay.

 : The device is compatible with Android Auto.

Device Pairing Tips:

- Up to six devices can be paired.
- Your device's battery may drain faster when it is paired to the system.

Bluetooth® setup

You can turn *Bluetooth*® function on and off.

- [1] Press the  (Home) button.
- [2] Select **General Settings**.
- [3] Select **Connections**.
- [4] Select **Manage Device Connections**.
- [5] Select **Options**.
- [6] Select **Bluetooth**.
- [7] Select **ON**.

To pair a device

- [1] Press the  (Home) button.
- [2] Select **General Settings**.
- [3] Select **Connections**.
- [4] Select **Manage Device Connections**.
 - » If your device has already been paired to the system, the device name appears on the list.

 To change the currently paired device ▶ P.159

- [5] Select **+ Connect New Device**.
- [6] Make sure your device is in search or discoverable mode, then select **Search for Devices**.
 - » HFT automatically searches for a *Bluetooth*® device.
- [7] Select your device when it appears on the list.
 - » If your device still does not appear, search for *Bluetooth*® devices using your device. From your device, search for Vehicle Name.
 - » Confirm if the pairing code on the audio/information screen and your device matches. This may vary by device.
- [8] On your device, give pairing permission.

To change the currently paired device

- [1] Press the  (Home) button.
- [2] Select **General Settings**.
- [3] Select **Connections**.
- [4] Select **Manage Device Connections**.
- [5] Select the , , or  icon.
 - » When the  or  icon is selected, the  icon cannot be selected.
 - » You can set the connected device priority. Check the box on the device you want to prioritize.

- To pair other devices, select **+ Connect New Device** from the *Bluetooth*® screen.

To delete a paired device

- [1] Press the  (Home) button.

- [2] Select **General Settings**.
- [3] Select **Connections**.
- [4] Select **Manage Device Connections**.
- [5] Select a device you want to delete.
- [6] Select **Delete Device**.
 - » A confirmation message appears on the screen.
- [7] Select **Delete**.

About System Updates

When a software update is available for your vehicle, a notification will be displayed on the audio/information screen.

Instructions for performing updates via the audio/information screen are included in this manual.

For details on other methods of performing an update, please ask a dealer.

System updates that change specifications may result in some discrepancies with the information in this owner's manual.

Instructions

 System Updates ► P.163

Display Audio Basic Operations

Start Up

The Display Audio starts automatically when you set the power mode to ACCESSORY or ON. At start-up, the disclaimer screen will be displayed. When adding a new user, entry of user information is required at start-up.

Select **OK** on the disclaimer screen.

- » If you do not select **OK**, the system will automatically be switched to the home screen, or the top screen of the last executed application, after a certain period of time.
- » If there is no registered device, the *Bluetooth*® pairing screen will be displayed after selecting **OK** or after a certain period of time.

 About Wireless Connections ▶ P.158

Registering New User Information

- [1] Read the disclaimer screen and select **OK**.
- [2] Select **Set up profile**.
 - » If you want to change the language, select the language list.
- [3] Name your profile and select **Next**.
- [4] On the System-wide permission Settings screen, select the data you give permission for the system to access, and select **Accept**.
- [5] Select **Done for now**.
 - » By selecting **Profile lock**, you can set security settings for your profile.
 - Specifications may be changed via system updates, etc.

Reboot Audio

You can reboot the audio system.

- [1] Press and hold the  (Home) button until the reboot dialog screen appears.
- [2] Select **Reboot**.
 - » If **Safe Mode** is selected, the audio system will be rebooted with third-party applications turned off. After the power mode has been turned off once, third-party applications can be used again.

Home Screen

App icons can be added, deleted, or moved on the home screen.

- You cannot delete the **All Apps** icon.
- Apps will not be deleted by deleting the icon on the home screen.
- Select **Tips** to show tips. To hide them, select it again.

To Add/Remove App Icons on the Home Screen

App icons can be added or removed on the home screen.

- [1] Press the  (Home) button.
- [2] Select **All Apps**.
- [3] Select the apps you want to add or remove and check/uncheck the box.

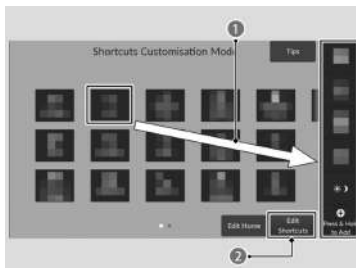
To Move/Remove App Icons on the Home Screen

You can change icon locations on the home screen.

- [1] Press the  (Home) button.
- [2] Select and hold an app icon.
- [3] Drag and drop the app icon to where you want it to be.
 - » Drag and drop the icon you want to remove to the **Hide** icon.
- [4] Press the  (Home) button or  (Back) button.
 - » The screen will return to the home screen.

To Store Shortcut Icons on the Home Screen

You can store up to five icons on the mode change switch bar.



- 1 Drag and drop
- 2 Edit Shortcuts

- [1] Press the  (Home) button.
- [2] Select and hold an app icon.
- [3] Select **Edit Shortcuts**.
- [4] Drag and drop the icon you want to store to the left of the home screen.
 - » You can also store app icons in the mode change switch bar by selecting icon → shortcut location.
- [5] Press the  (Home) button or  (Back) button.
 - » The screen will return to the home screen.

System Updates

System Updates uses the telematics control unit (TCU) or Wi-Fi communication capability to operate.

When an update for your system becomes available, a screen prompting you to update your system will be displayed on the audio/information screen.

- If new software has been released, perform an update as soon as possible.
- If a system update fails, please consult a dealer.
- System updates that change specifications may result in some discrepancies with the information in this owner's manual.
- Certain features may not be available during system updates.

Performing System Updates

- [1] Press the  (Home) button.
- [2] Select **System Updates**.
- [3] Select **Agree to Update while power mode is OFF** to permit the update.
 - » The installation progress screen displays.
 - » While the power mode is set to OFF, an update started notification displays for a few seconds.
- [4] The next time the power mode is turned to ON, the system update results screen will be displayed.
 - » System update results can also be viewed from **System Updates → Settings → Update History**.



Make sure your vehicle is stopped in a safe location before starting a system update.



If you have pressed **Agree to Update while power mode is OFF** on the agreement screen when an update is being offered, or **Automatic Update** is set to **Enable**, and the update started notification is not displayed even though the power mode is set to OFF, it may be due to one or more of the conditions listed below. For more information, consult a dealer.

- The shift position is not in **P**.
- The vehicle is providing one or more emergency notifications.
- The 12-volt battery is depleted.

! If the system is being updated via Wi-Fi, you will not be able to use this feature in some situations based on Wi-Fi authentication methods.

- The connection requires you to log in.
- Agreement to terms of use is required.

! If you are disconnected from the network, the download will be stopped. Download is resumed when a new network connection is established.

System Updates Settings

You can change or confirm system update settings.

- [1] Press the  (Home) button.
- [2] Select **System Updates**.
- [3] Select **Settings**.
- [4] Select the option you want to change or confirm.

The following settings can be set.

- **Automatic Update**
- **Automatic Download**
- **Control Unit Versions**
- **Connection Setup**

 Wi-Fi Connection ▶ P.180

- **Update History**

! To perform a system update via Wi-Fi, change settings for connecting to Wi-Fi.

 Wi-Fi Connection ▶ P.180

Trip Computer

Displays the trip computer information.

- [1] Press the  (Home) button.
- [2] Select **Trip Computer**.

- **Current Drive** tab: Displays the current trip information.
- **Trip A/Trip B** tab: Displays information for the current and three previous drives. The information is stored every time you reset Trip A/B.
To reset Trip A/B, select **Menu**, then select **Delete Trip History**.
To change the setting of how to reset Trip A/B, select **Menu**, then select **“Trip A” reset timing** or **“Trip B” reset timing**.

Clock

Adjusting the Clock

You can adjust the time manually in the audio/information screen when the power mode is in ON.

- » The clock is automatically updated through the audio system.
- » The Guest user cannot adjust the clock.

- [1] Press the  (Home) button.
- [2] Select **General Settings**.
- [3] Select **System**.
- [4] Select **Date & Time**.
- [5] Select **Set Date & Time**.
- [6] Select **Automatic Date & Time**, then select **OFF**.

To adjust date:

- [7] Select **Set Date**.
- [8] Select  or .
- [9] Press the  (Back) button to set the date.

To adjust time:

- [7] Select **Set Time**.
- [8] Select  or .
- [9] Press the  (Back) button to set the time.



You can customize the clock display to show the 12 hour clock or 24 hour clock.

 How to Customize the General Settings ▶ P.190



You can customize the date display.

 How to Customize the General Settings ▶ P.190

Wallpaper Setup

You can change, store, and delete the wallpaper on the audio/information screen.

» The maximum image size is 4,096 × 2,304 pixels and the data size is less than 10 MB.

■ Import wallpaper

- [1] Connect the USB flash drive to the USB charging/connector port.

 USB Ports  P.155

- [2] Select **Clock**.
 [3] Select **Menu**.
 [4] Select **Clock Faces**.
 [5] Select **Add More**.
 [6] Import a desired picture.
 » Multiple pictures can be imported at the same time.
 [7] Select **Select Files**.
 [8] Select **Add Files**.

■ Select wallpaper

- [1] Select **Clock**.
 [2] Select **Menu**.
 [3] Select **Clock Faces**.
 [4] Select a desired wallpaper.
 [5] Select **Save**.

■ Delete wallpaper

- [1] Select **Clock**.
 [2] Select **Menu**.
 [3] Select **Clock Faces**.
 [4] Select **Delete Files**.
 [5] Select **Select Files to Delete**.
 » If you want to delete all wallpapers, select **Delete All Files**.
 [6] Select a desired wallpaper.
 [7] Select **Select Files**.
 [8] Select **Delete Files**.



Do not turn off your vehicle or remove the USB memory immediately after changing or importing wallpaper. A saving error may occur, and USB data may be corrupted.

Adjusting the Sound

- [1] Press the  (Home) button.
- [2] Select an audio source icon.

▼ Radio, DAB, USB Audio (video) mode

- [3] Select **Menu**.
- [4] Select **Sound Settings**.
- [5] Select the setting you want.

▼ USB Audio (music), wired connection, *Bluetooth®* Audio mode

- [3] Select **Sound**.
- [4] Select the setting you want.

Select an item from the following choices:

- **Bass / Mid / Treble**: Bass, Midrange, Treble
- **Balance / Fader**: Balance, Fader
- **Bose Dynamic Speed Compensation**: Sets the amount of volume increase.

You can also adjust the sound by the following procedure.

- [1] Press the  (Home) button.
- [2] Select **General Settings**.
- [3] Select **Sound**.

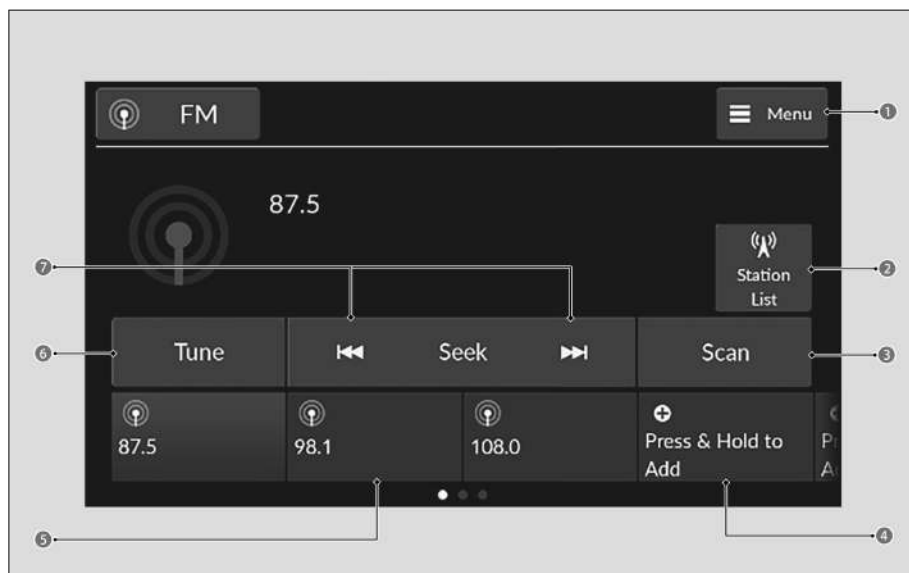
To reset each setting for **Bass / Mid / Treble** and **Balance / Fader**, select **Reset to Default** in each setting item.

Changing the Display Settings

You can change the brightness of the audio/information screen.

- [1] Press the  (Home) button.
 - [2] Select **General Settings**.
 - [3] Select **Display**.
 - [4] Select the setting you want.
- » To reset the settings, select **Reset to Default**.

Playing the Radio



- ① Menu Icon
- ② Station List
- ③ Scan Icon
- ④ Press & Hold to Add
- ⑤ Preset Icons
- ⑥ Tune Icon
- ⑦ Seek Icons

Station List

Lists the strongest stations on the selected band.

- [1] Select **Station List** to display a list.
- [2] Select the station.

Manual update

Updates your available station list at any time.

- [1] Select **Station List** to display a list.
- [2] Select **Refresh**.

Radio Data System (RDS)

Provides text data related to your selected RDS-capable FM station.

- » When you select an RDS-capable FM station, the RDS automatically turns on, and the frequency display changes to the station name. However, when the signals of that station become weak, the display changes from the station name to the frequency.

To find an RDS station from station list

- [1] Select **Station List** to display a list while listening to an FM station.
- [2] Select the station.

Manual update

Updates your available station list at any time.

- [1] Select **Station List** to display a list while listening to an FM station.
- [2] Select **Refresh**.

Scan

Samples each of the strongest stations on the selected band for a few seconds. To turn off scan, select **Stop** or press the  (Back) button.

Favourite Station

To switch the favourite station, select the preset icon.

- » Swipe the preset icon area to display the next preset icons.

To add a station:

- [1] Tune to the selected station.
- [2] Select and hold **Press & Hold to Add**.
 - » You can store 12 stations into preset memory.

Editing a favourite station

Select and hold the desired favourite station icon.

The following items are available:

- **Remove Favourite:** Delete the favourite station icon from the favourite station list.
- **Replace with** (number): Replace the stored favourite station icon.
- **Add to Home:** Add the shortcut icon of the stored favourite station to the home screen.

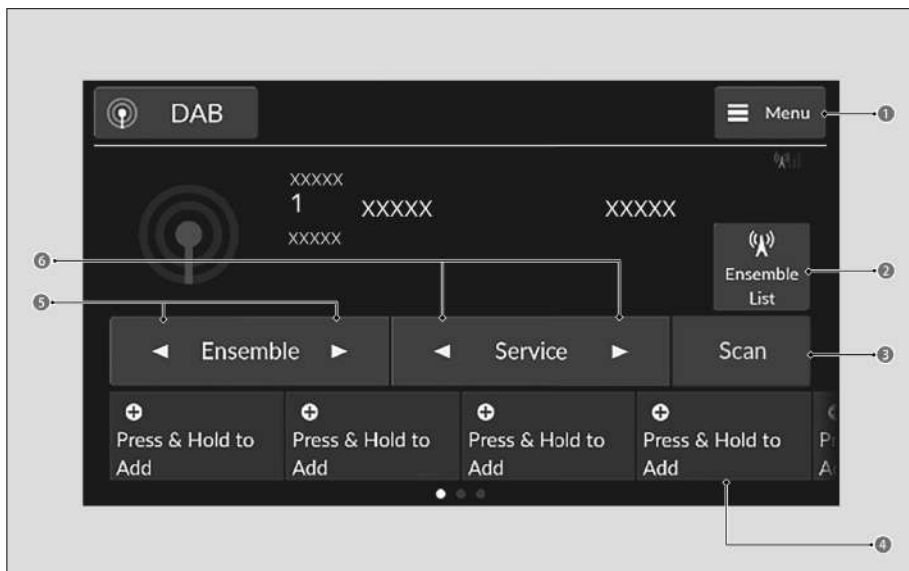
Tune

Select to use the on-screen keyboard for entering the radio frequency directly.

Seek

Select  or  to search up and down on the selected band for a station with a strong signal.

Playing DAB (Digital Audio Broadcasting)



- ① Menu Icon
- ② Ensemble List Icon
- ③ Scan Icon
- ④ Press & Hold to Add
- ⑤ Ensemble Icons
- ⑥ Service Icons

Preset Memory

To add a service:

- [1] Tune to the selected service.

- [2] Select and hold the preset icon to store that station.
 - » Selecting **Press & Hold to Add** can set a new preset station.
 - » You can store 12 ensembles into preset memory.

Ensemble List

- [1] Select **Ensemble List** to display a list.
- [2] Select the ensemble.

Manual update

Updates your available ensemble list at any time.

- [1] Select **Ensemble List** to display a list.
- [2] Select **Refresh**.

Ensemble

- [1] Select ◀ or ▶ to tune the ensemble.
- [2] Select and hold ◀ or ▶ to search the selected service up to down for an ensemble until a receivable ensemble is found.

Service

Tunes the service component.

To tune it, select ◀ or ▶.

Scan

Samples each of the receivable ensemble or service on the selected service for a few seconds. To begin scanning, select **Scan**, and to turn it off, select **Cancel** or press the  button.

About Media Playback

By connecting a device to the audio system, you can play audio files.



It may be illegal to perform some data device functions while driving.

- Available operating functions vary on models or versions. Some functions may not be available on the vehicle's audio system.

- Depending on the connected device, the name of the artist, album, or track may not appear correctly.

About Play Modes

■ Shuffle/Repeat

Repeatedly select the shuffle or repeat icon until you find a play mode option of your preference.

-  **Shuffle off:** Shuffle mode to off.
-  **Shuffle all:** Plays all available songs available in random order.
-  **Shuffle in folder:** Plays all songs in the current folder in random order.*¹
-  **Repeat off:** Repeat mode to off.
-  **Repeat track:** Repeats the current song.
-  **Repeat folder/group:** Repeats all songs in the current folder/group.*¹
-  **Repeat all:** Repeats all songs (in the current folder*²).

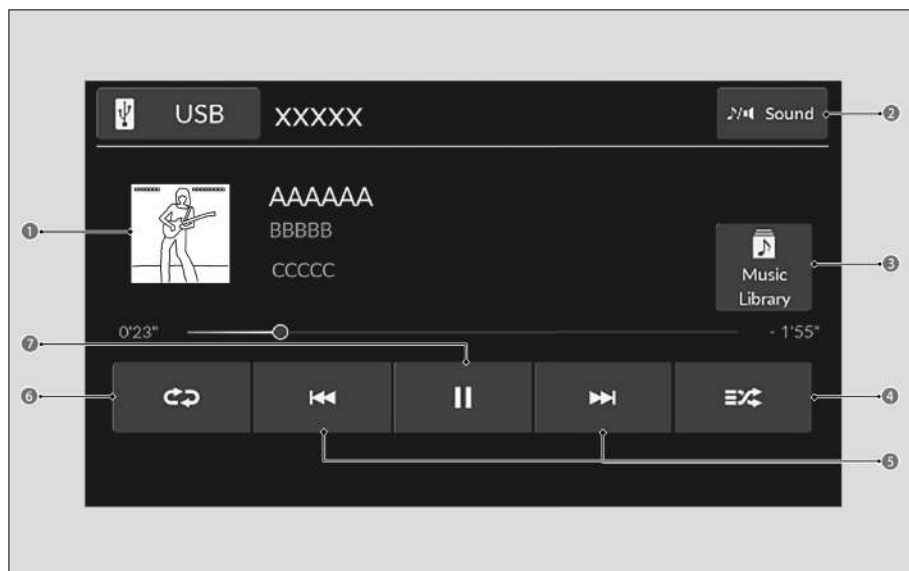
*1: When playing a song via USB device

*2: When playing a song using *Bluetooth*® Audio

Audio Playback via Wired Connection

Connect a device, such as an iPod or iPhone to the USB charging/connector port, and select the **USB** icon.

 About Wired Connections ▶ P.158



- ❶ Cover Art
- ❷ Sound Icon
- ❸ Music Library Icon
- ❹ Shuffle Icon
- ❺ Track Icons
- ❻ Repeat Icon
- ❼ Play/Pause Icon

If an iPhone is connected via Apple CarPlay, the USB source will be unavailable and audio files on the phone will be playable only within Apple CarPlay.

Track icons

Select or to change songs.
 Select and hold to move rapidly within a song.

How to select a song from the music search list

- [1] Select **Music Library**.
- [2] Select a search category (e.g., Artists, Albums, etc.).
- [3] Continue making selections until you find the song of your choice.

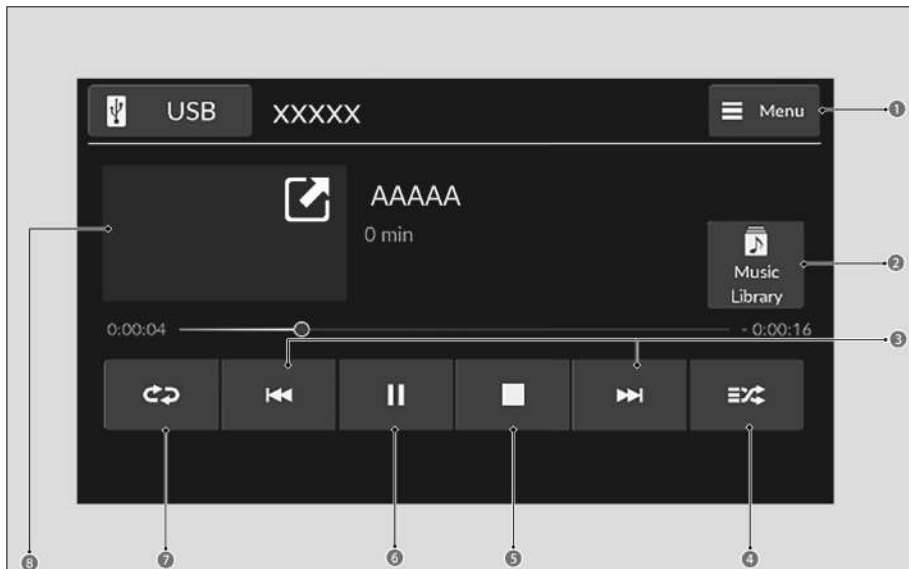
Media Playback via USB Device

Connect your USB flash drive to the USB charging/connector port, and select the **USB** icon.

About Wired Connections ▶P.158

The audio system can read certain USB drive formats to play audio/video files.

Compatible iPod, iPhone, and USB Flash Drives ▶P.198



- ① Sound^{*1}/Menu^{*2} Icon
- ② Music Library Icon
- ③ Track^{*1}/Video^{*2} Icons
- ④ Shuffle Icon
- ⑤ Stop Icon^{*2}
- ⑥ Play/Pause Icon
- ⑦ Repeat Icon
- ⑧ Cover Art^{*1}/Mini Player^{*2}

*1: When playing an audio file

*2: When playing a video file



WMA files protected by digital rights management (DRM) cannot be played.

Track*1/video*2 icons

Select  or  to change files.
Select and hold to move rapidly within a file.

*1: When playing an audio file

*2: When playing a video file

How to select a file/video from the music search list

- [1] Select **Music Library**.
- [2] Select a search category (e.g., Artists, Albums, etc.).
- [3] Continue making selections until you find the file of your choice.

Menu (When playing a video file)

Changes the USB settings when playing a video file.

- [1] Select **Menu**.
- [2] Select an option.

- **Image Settings:** Changes the brightness of the audio/information screen. To reset the settings, select **Reset to Default**. (**Brightness/Contrast/Black Level/Tone/Tint**).
- **Aspect Ratio:** Selects the display mode with a different aspect ratio. (**Original/Normal*1/Full/Zoom**)
- **Screen Size:** Changes the display screen size. (**Normal*1/Wide/Full**)
- **Overlay Clock Location:** Changes the clock display layout. (**Upper right*1/Upper left/Lower right/Lower left/OFF**)

*1: Default Setting

Shrink/expand a video

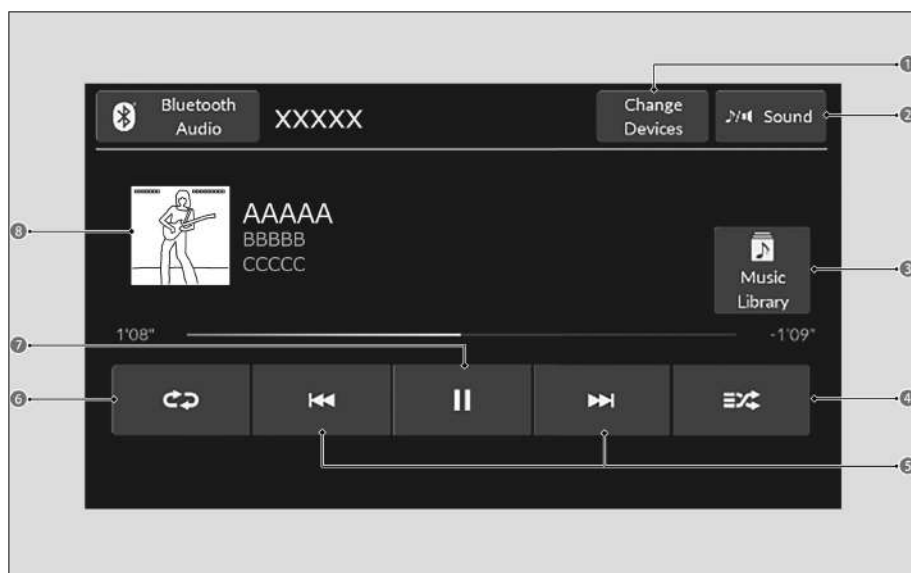
-  : Expand a video screen.
-  : Shrink a video screen.

Audio Playback via *Bluetooth*® Device

Your audio system allows you to listen to audio files from your *Bluetooth*-compatible device.

This function is available when the device is paired and connected to the vehicle's Hands-Free Telephone (HFT) system.

 About Wireless Connections ▶ P.158



- 1 Change Devices**
- 2 Sound Icon**
- 3 Music Library Icon**
- 4 Shuffle Icon**
- 5 Track Icons**
- 6 Repeat Icon**
- 7 Play/Pause Icon**
- 8 Cover Art**

- Not all *Bluetooth*-enabled devices with streaming audio capabilities are compatible with the system. To check if your device is compatible, ask a dealer.
- Only one device can be used with HFT at a time. When there is more than one paired device in the vehicle, the system automatically connects to the prioritized device. You can assign priority to a device in the *Bluetooth*® device list.

[Q About Wireless Connections](#) ▶P.158

- If more than one device is paired to the HFT, there may be a delay before the system begins to play.
- If a device is currently connected via Apple CarPlay or Android Auto, *Bluetooth*® Audio from that device is unavailable.
- To play the audio files, you may need to operate your device. If so, follow the device manufacturer's operating instructions.
- Switching to another mode pauses the audio files playing from your device.

- You can change the connected device by selecting **Change Devices**.

 [About Wireless Connections](#) ▶P.158

Track icons

Select  or  to change songs.

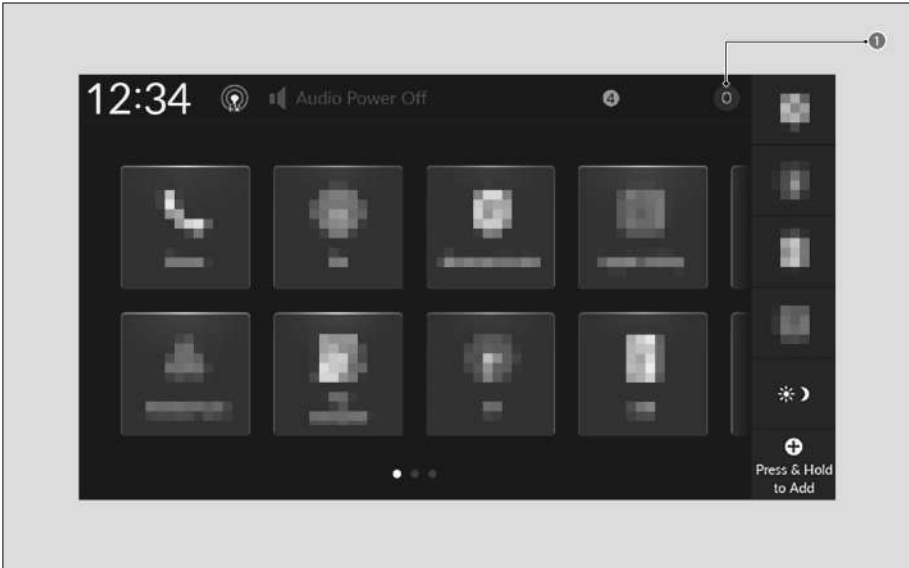
Select and hold to move rapidly within a song.

How to select a song from the music search list

- [1] Select **Music Library**.
- [2] Select a search category (e.g., Albums).
- [3] Select an item.

User Information

You can add and change users, as well as customize user settings. By registering a user, you can personalize your vehicle settings. You can select a user when the audio/information screen loads, even when the doors are open or unlocked.



1 User Information



You can customize settings individually for each user.

 [How to Customize the Profile Settings](#) ▶P.196

- You can customize security settings for each user. If you have forgotten security settings, you will need to delete the user and create a new one. If you have forgotten security settings for the Owner user, please contact a dealer.
- Certain features are unavailable when using a newly created user or the Guest user.

Registering a User

[1] Select User Information.

» You can also add users when **Profile Settings → Change Profile** is selected.

 How to Customize the Profile Settings ▶ P.196

» You can add users even when the doors are open and unlocked.

[2] Select **Change Profile**.

[3] Select **+Add User**.

[4] Select **OK**.

[5] Enter user information.

 Start Up ▶ P.161

- You can add up to four users other than the Owner user and the Guest user.
- When you add a user, the audio/information screen is loaded under that user.

Switching Users

[1] Select User Information.

» You can also change users when **Profile Settings → Change Profile** is selected.

 How to Customize the Profile Settings ▶ P.196

» You can switch users even when the doors are open and unlocked.

[2] Select **Change Profile**.

[3] Select the user you want to use.

- Users with customized security settings can restrict screen operations by selecting the **Screen Lock** shortcut.

Deleting Users

[1] Select **Profile Settings**.

[2] Select **Manage Profile**.

[3] Select **Profiles & accounts**.

[4] Select **Delete your profile**.

- When the profile currently being used is deleted, the audio/information screen is loaded under the Guest user.

- While using the Owner user, you can delete other users via **General Settings → Advanced Settings**.

 How to Customize the General Settings ▶P.190

- Depending on the version of your OS, the steps for deleting a user may differ from the instructions on this page. Follow the on-screen prompts.

Display Audio Other Operations

Wi-Fi Connection

This vehicle is equipped with Wi-Fi connectivity. You can connect to an external Wi-Fi hotspot or communication device.

Wi-Fi and Wi-Fi Direct are registered trademarks of Wi-Fi Alliance®.



Use Wi-Fi Inside the Vehicle

- [1] Press the  (Home) button.
 - [2] Select **General Settings**.
 - [3] Select **Connections**.
 - [4] Select **Wi-Fi**.
 - » To change the Wi-Fi settings, select **Options**.
 - [5] Select the access point you want to connect to the system.
 - [6] Select **Connect**.
 - » When the connection is successful, the status text **Connected** next to the network name is displayed on the list.
 - [7] Press the  (Home) button to go back to the home screen.
- You cannot go through the setting procedure while the vehicle is moving. Park in a safe place to set the audio system in Wi-Fi mode.
 - Some mobile phone carriers charge for tethering and smartphone data use. Check your phone's data subscription package.
 - Check your phone manual to find out if the phone has Wi-Fi connectivity.
 - You can confirm whether Wi-Fi connection is on or off with the  icon on the Wi-Fi network list. Transmission speed and others will not be displayed on this screen.
 - In case of Wi-Fi connection with your phone, make sure your phone's Wi-Fi setting is in access point (tethering) mode.
 - When you select **Access Point**, you can set up a wireless connection from the phone to the vehicle.

 How to Customize the General Settings ▶ P.190

Apple CarPlay

If you connect an Apple CarPlay-compatible iPhone to the system via USB charging/connector port or wirelessly, and the **Apple CarPlay** icon is selected, you can operate Apple CarPlay on the audio/information screen.

Connecting a Device ▶P.157

- We recommend that you update iOS to the latest version when using Apple CarPlay.
- Park in a safe place before connecting your iPhone to Apple CarPlay and when launching any compatible apps.
- You can use the method below to change Apple CarPlay settings after you have completed the initial setup:
Press the  (Home) button → Select **General Settings → Connections → Manage Device Connections → Select device.**
- While connected to Apple CarPlay, it is not possible to use the *Bluetooth*® Audio or Hands-Free Telephone. You can only make calls or listen to music through Apple CarPlay.
If you want to make a call with Hands-Free Telephone, turn Apple CarPlay OFF or detach the USB cable from your iPhone. Other previously paired phones can also use *Bluetooth*® Audio.
- Apple CarPlay and Android Auto cannot run at the same time.
- When using Hands Free, you can only control it with Siri.

Operating Apple CarPlay with Siri ▶P.182

- For details on countries and regions where Apple CarPlay is available, as well as information pertaining to function, refer to the Apple website.
- **Apple CarPlay Operating Requirements & Limitations**
Apple CarPlay requires a compatible iPhone with an active cellular connection and data plan. Your carrier's rate plans will apply.
Changes in operating systems, hardware, software, and other technology integral to providing Apple CarPlay functionality, as well as new or revised governmental regulations, may result in a decrease or cessation of Apple CarPlay functionality and services. Honda cannot and does not provide any warranty or guarantee of future Apple CarPlay performance or functionality.
- It is possible to use third-party apps if they are compatible with Apple CarPlay. Refer to the Apple website for information on compatible apps.
- Use of Apple CarPlay will result in the collection of certain user and vehicle information (such as vehicle location, speed, and status) from your iPhone to enhance the Apple CarPlay experience. You will need to consent to the sharing of this information on the audio/information screen.
- **Use of user and vehicle information**
The use and handling of user and vehicle information transmitted to/from your iPhone by Apple CarPlay is governed by the Apple iOS terms and conditions and Apple's Privacy Policy.
- If there is a problem with the connection of your iPhone, an error code will be displayed.

How to Customize the General Settings ▶P.190

Apple CarPlay Menu

For details on available applications, please refer to the Apple CarPlay website.

Apps displayed on your screen can be changed with your iPhone.

Select the **Honda** icon on the Apple CarPlay menu screen to go back to the home screen.

Connecting Apple CarPlay Using the USB Cable

Connect the iPhone to the USB charging/connector port.

 About Wired Connections ▶ P.158

If another phone is already connected to the audio system, the confirmation screen will appear, and then select **Continue Connecting**.

Connecting Apple CarPlay Wirelessly

[1] Press the  (Home) button.

[2] Select **Apple CarPlay**.

[3] Select **Check Device List** or **Connect New Phone**.

[4] Pair the iPhone to the vehicle's Hands-Free Telephone (HFT) system.

 About Wireless Connections ▶ P.158

[5] Select **Yes**.

Operating Apple CarPlay with Siri

Press and hold the  (Talk) button to activate Siri.

Press again to deactivate Siri.

 Audio Remote Controls ▶ P.156

Below are examples of questions and commands for Siri:

- What movies are playing today?
- Call Dad at work.
- What song is this?
- How's the weather tomorrow?
- Read my latest email.

For more information, please visit www.apple.com/ios/siri.

Android Auto™

If you connect an Android™ phone to the system via USB charging/connector port or wirelessly, and the **Android Auto** icon is selected, you can operate Android Auto on the audio/information screen.

Connecting a Device ▶P.157

- We recommend that you update Android OS to the latest version when using Android Auto. Bluetooth® A2DP cannot be used while your phone is connected to Android Auto.
- Google, Android, Google Play, Android Auto and other marks are trademarks of Google LLC. Compatible Android phone and compatible active data plan required.
<https://partnermarketinghub.withgoogle.com/brands/android-auto/messaging/consumer-messaging/#disclaimers>
- Park in a safe place before connecting your Android phone to Android Auto and when launching any compatible apps.
- You can use the method below to change Android Auto settings after you have completed the initial setup:
Press the  (Home) button → Select **General Settings** → **Connections** → **Manage Device Connections** → Select device.
- Apple CarPlay and Android Auto cannot run at the same time.
- To use each of Android Auto's features, say "Hey Google" while the Android Auto screen is displayed, or press and hold the  (Talk) button to activate Google Assistant.

Operating Android Auto with Google Assistant ▶P.184

- For details on countries and regions where Android Auto is available, as well as information pertaining to function, refer to the Android Auto help center.
- **Android Auto Operating Requirements & Limitations**
Android Auto requires a compatible Android phone with an active cellular connection and data plan. Your carrier's rate plans will apply.
Changes in operating systems, hardware, software, and other technology integral to providing Android Auto functionality, as well as new or revised governmental regulations, may result in a decrease or cessation of Android Auto functionality and services. Honda cannot and does not provide any warranty or guarantee of future Android Auto performance or functionality.
- It is possible to use third-party apps if they are compatible with Android Auto. Refer to the Android Auto help center for information on compatible apps.
- **Use of user and vehicle information**
The use and handling of user and vehicle information transmitted to/from your phone by Android Auto is governed by Google's Privacy Policy.
- If there is a problem with the connection of your smartphone, an error code will be displayed.

How to Customize the General Settings ▶P.190

Android Auto Menu

For details on available applications, please refer to the Android Auto help center.

Apps displayed on your screen can be changed with your smartphone. Select the **Honda** icon on the Android Auto menu screen to go back to the home screen.

Connecting Android Auto Using the USB Cable

Connect the Android phone to the USB charging/connector port.

 About Wired Connections ▶P.158

If another phone is already connected to the audio system, the confirmation screen will appear, and then select **Continue Connecting**.

Connecting Android Auto Wirelessly

- [1] Press the  (Home) button.
- [2] Select **Android Auto**.
- [3] Select **Connect Phone** or **Search for Devices**.
- [4] Pair the Android phone to the vehicle's Hands-Free Telephone (HFT) system.

 About Wireless Connections ▶P.158

- [5] Select **Yes**.

Operating Android Auto with Google Assistant

Press and hold the  (Talk) button to talk to Google Assistant.

 Audio Remote Controls ▶P.156

Below are examples of things you can ask Google Assistant:

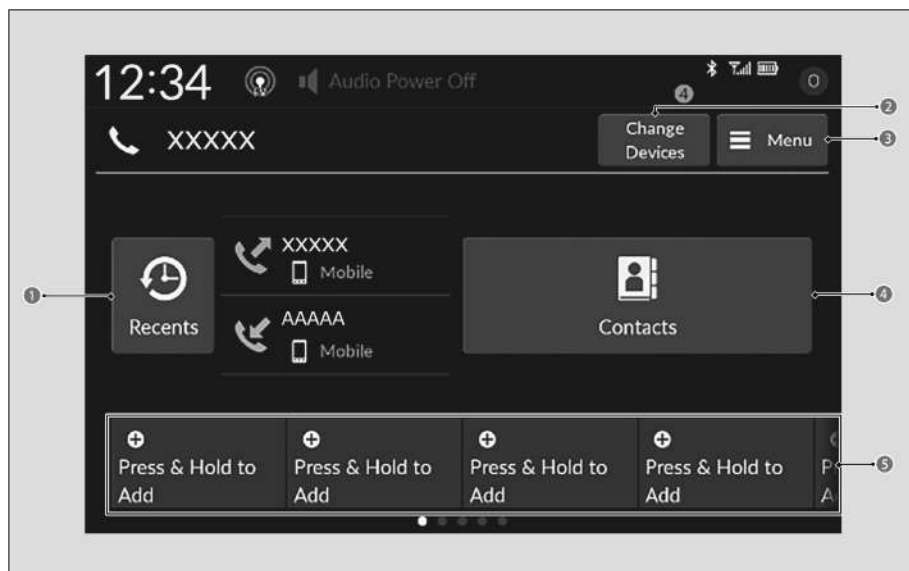
- Reply to text.
- Call my wife.
- Navigate to Honda.
- Play my music.
- Send a text message to my wife.
- Call flower shop.

For more information, please refer to the Android Auto help center.

Hands-Free Telephone System

Hands-Free Telephone (HFT) system allows you to place and receive phone calls using your vehicle's audio system without handling your mobile phone. Select the **Phone** icon when your phone is connected to the system wirelessly.

 About Wireless Connections ▶P.158



- ① Recents
- ② Change Devices
- ③ Menu
- ④ Contacts
- ⑤ Favourite Contacts

- To use the system, the *Bluetooth*® setting must be **ON**.

How to Customize the General Settings ▶ P.190

- *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology

The *Bluetooth*® word mark and logos are registered trademarks owned by *Bluetooth*® SIG, Inc., and any use of such marks by Honda Motor Co., Ltd., is under licence. Other trademarks and trade names are those of their respective owners.

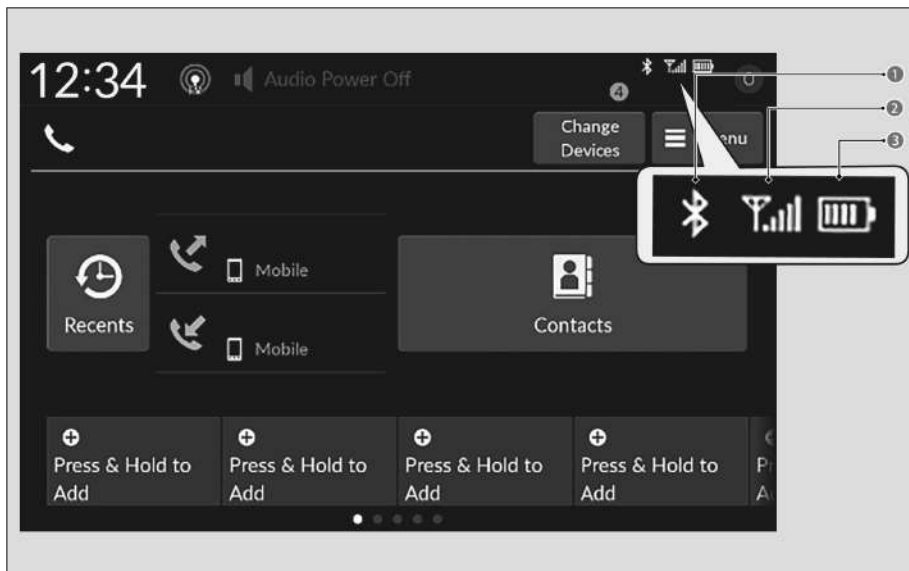
- **HFT Limitations**

An incoming call on HFT will interrupt the audio system when it is playing. It will resume when the call is ended.

- When you select a name from the list in the mobile phonebook, you can see a category icon. The icons indicate what types of numbers are stored for that name.
- On some phones, it may not be possible to import the category icons to the system.
- Depending on the connected mobile phone, some features may not be available.

HFT Status Display

The audio/information screen notifies you when there is an incoming call.



1 Bluetooth® Indicator

Appears when your phone is connected to HFT.

2 Signal Strength

3 Battery Level Status

- The information that appears on the audio/information screen varies between phone models.

Favourite Contacts

To add a favourite contact

- [1] Press the  (Home) button.
- [2] Select **Phone**.
- [3] Select and hold **Press & Hold to Add**.
- [4] Select **From Recents**, **From Contacts**, or **Using Enter Number**.

▼ From Recents, From Contacts

- [5] Select a phone number.

▼ Using Enter Number

- [5] Input number, and select **Enter**.

To edit a favourite contact

- [1] Press the  (Home) button.

- [2] Select **Phone**.
- [3] Select and hold a favourite contact.
- [4] Select **Edit Favourites**.
- [5] Select a setting you want.
- [6] Select **Enter** or .
- » To delete a favourite contact, select **Remove Favourite**.
- [7] Press the  (Home) button or  (Back) button.

■ Add a favourite contact to homepage

- [1] Press the  (Home) button.
- [2] Select **Phone**.
- [3] Select and hold a favourite contact.
- [4] Select **Add to Home**.

Making a Call

You can make calls by inputting any phone number, or by using the imported phonebook, call history, or favourite contact entries.

■ To make a call using the imported phonebook

- [1] Press the  (Home) button.
- [2] Select **Phone**.
- [3] Select **Contacts**.
- [4] Select a name.
 - » You can sort by **First Name** or **Surname**. Select the icon on the upper right of the screen.
- [5] Select a number.
 - » Dialing starts automatically.

■ To make a call using a phone number

- [1] Press the  (Home) button.
- [2] Select **Phone**.
- [3] Select **Menu**.
- [4] Select **Keypad**.
- [5] Select a number.
- [6] Select **Call**.
 - » Dialing starts automatically.

■ To make a call using the call history

Call history is stored by **All**, **Dialled**, **Missed**, and **Received**.

- [1] Press the  (Home) button.
- [2] Select **Phone**.
- [3] Select **Recents**.
 - » You can sort by **All**, **Dialled**, **Missed**, or **Received** when you select the icon on the upper right of the screen.
- [4] Select a number or contact name.
 - » Dialing starts automatically.

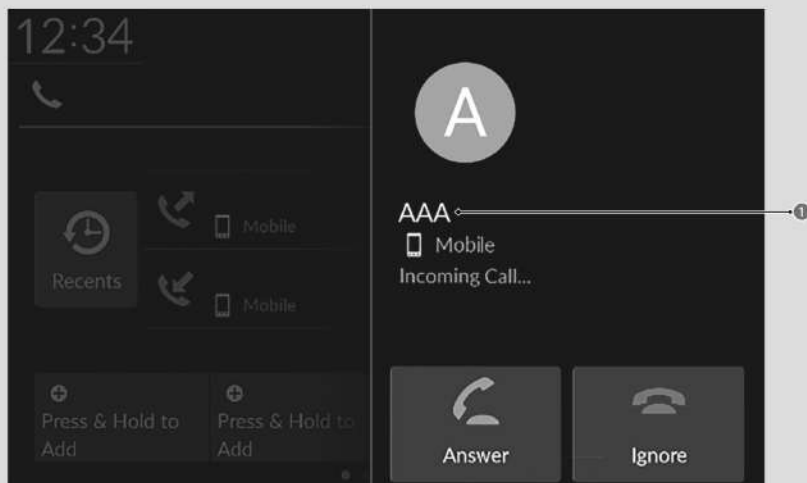
The call history appears only when a phone is connected to the system.

■ To make a call using a favourite contact entry

- [1] Press the  (Home) button.
 - [2] Select **Phone**.
 - [3] Select a favourite contact.
- » Dialing starts automatically.

Receiving a Call

When there is an incoming call, an audible notification sounds (if activated) and the **Incoming Call...** screen appears.



1 Caller's Name (If registered)/Caller's Number (If not registered)

To answer the call:

Select the  (**Answer**) icon.

You can also answer the call using the left selector wheel roll up or down to select  (**Answer**) on the driver information interface.

To decline or end the call:

Select the  (**Ignore**) icon.

You can also ignore the call using the left selector wheel roll up or down to select  (**Ignore**) on the driver information interface.

Call Waiting:

- Select the  (**Answer**) icon to put the current call on hold to answer the incoming call.
- Select  using the left selector wheel to return to the current call.
- Select the  (**Ignore**) icon to ignore the incoming call if you do not want to answer it.
- Select  if you want to hang up the current call.

Options During a Call

The following options are available during a call.

- **Hang Up:** End the call. Calls can also be ended from the driver information interface by using the left selector wheel roll up or down.
- **Keypad:** Send numbers during a call. This is useful when you call a menu-driven phone system.

 Making a Call ► P.187

- **Mute:** Mute your voice.
- **Transfer to Mobile:** Transfer a call from the system to your phone.

Phone Menu Screen

By selecting **Menu** and selecting a settings item, you can change the Hands-Free Telephone (HFT) system settings.

The following items can be set.

- **Keypad:** Enter a phone number to dial.
- **Latest Call History:** Set whether the history shortcut is displayed in the phone screen.
- **Auto Sync Phone:** Set phonebook and call history data to be automatically imported when a phone is paired to HFT.
- **Auto Phone Call Transfer:** Set calls to automatically transfer from your phone to HFT when you enter the vehicle.
- **Ringtone:** Select a fixed ringtone or the one from the connected mobile phone.

Display Audio Customized Features

Customized Features

Use the audio/information screen to customize certain features.

! When you customize settings, make sure that the vehicle is at a complete stop and shift to **P**.

How to Customize the General Settings

With the power mode in ON, press the  (Home) button, select **General Settings**, and select a setting item.

List of Customizable Options

System

Date & Time → Set Date & Time

Automatic Date & Time

ON/OFF

Set Date

Adjusts date.

 Adjusting the Clock ▶ P.165

Set Time

Adjusts clock.

 Adjusting the Clock ▶ P.165

Date & Time → Time Zone

Automatic Time Zone

ON/OFF

(Select time zone)

Changes the time zone manually.

Date & Time → Date Format

Day-of-week, MM DD, YYYY/
YYYY.MM.DD Day-of-week/
YYYY.MM.DD (Day-of-week)/Day-of-
week DD.MM.YYYY/DD.MM.YYYY

Date & Time → Time Format

12-H/24-H

Language

English/Spanish/French

Touch Panel Sensitivity

Low/High

About → IP address

Displays the Android setting items.

About → Wi-Fi MAC address

Displays the Android setting items.

About → Bluetooth MAC address

Displays the Android setting items.

About → Serial Number

Displays the Android setting items.

About → Up time

Displays the Android setting items.

About → Model Number

Displays the Android setting items.

About → Android Version

Displays the Android setting items.

Connections**Manage Device Connections → Options****Bluetooth**

ON/OFF

Priority Device Information

Displays the priority device.

Change System Name

Changes vehicle name for *Bluetooth®* connection setting.

Smartphone Projection Screen Size

Normal/Wide

Smartphone Projection Error Code

Displays the error code(s) of the smartphone projection.

About → Kernel Version

Displays the Android setting items.

About → Build Number

Displays the Android setting items.

About → Software Version

Displays the Android setting items.

Factory Data Reset

Cancel/Continue

 Defaulting All the Settings ▶ P.196

Manage Device Connections → + Connect New Device

Pairs a new phone to HFT.

 About Wireless Connections
▶ P.158

Manage Device Connections → (Saved Devices)

Connects, disconnects, or deletes a paired phone.

 About Wireless Connections
▶ P.158

Wi-Fi → Options**Wi-Fi**

OFF/ON

Add Network

Allows you to connect to a new external network.

Add Network (Advance)

Adds you to connect to a new external network.

Saved Networks

Deletes a saved network or changes update permission settings for the selected network.

Access Point → Options

Access Point

OFF/ON

Privacy

Data Sharing with Honda

Disable/Enable

Microphone

Turns the microphone on and off. eCall can still be used regardless of settings.

Location

Sets the data sharing permission for each function.

Display

Brightness

Changes the brightness of the audio/information screen.

Edit Access Point Settings

Allows you to confirm hotspot settings and edit hotspot connection information.

Data Connection Options → Set Up Wi-Fi

Displays the Wi-Fi settings screen.

 Wi-Fi Connection  P.180

App permissions

Sets the data sharing permission for each function.

System-wide Permission Settings

Sets the data sharing permission for each function.

Infotainment system data

Sets the data sharing permission for each function.

Contrast

Changes the contrast of the audio/information screen.

Black Level

Changes the black level of the audio/information screen.

Day Mode*1

Changes between the daytime mode and night mode.

Night Mode*1

Changes between the daytime mode and night mode.

Sound

Bass / Mid / Treble → Treble

Adjusts the settings of the audio speakers' sound.

 Adjusting the Sound ▶P.167

Bass / Mid / Treble → Midrange

Adjusts the settings of the audio speakers' sound.

 Adjusting the Sound ▶P.167

Bass / Mid / Treble → Bass

Adjusts the settings of the audio speakers' sound.

Sound Volume

System Sounds

Adjusts the sound volume.

Voice Recognition

Adjusts the sound volume.

Navigation Guidance

Adjusts the sound volume.

Reset to Default

Resets the display settings to their factory defaults.

Display OFF

Turns the audio/information screen brightness off.

*1: When the AID sensor is disabled.

 Adjusting the Sound ▶P.167

Balance / Fader

Adjusts the settings of the audio speakers' sound.

 Adjusting the Sound ▶P.167

Bose Dynamic Speed Compensation

Adjusts the volume level based on the vehicle speed.

 Adjusting the Sound ▶P.167

Phone Calls

Adjusts the sound volume.

Reset to Default

Resets the sound volume settings to their factory defaults.

■ Camera

Rear Wide Camera → Guidelines

Fixed Guideline

ON/OFF

■ Voice Control

Listen for “Hey Siri”^{*1}

ON/OFF

Dynamic Guideline

ON/OFF

^{*1}: Activates when the iPhone is connected.

■ Ambient Lighting Settings

Adjusts the ambient light.

■ Security

You can customize security settings. Please confirm the details on the audio/information screen. Specifications are subject to change via system updates, etc.

■ Advanced Settings

You can customize advanced system settings. Please confirm the details on the audio/information screen. Specifications may be changed via system updates, etc.

How to Customize the Vehicle Settings

With the power mode in ON, press the  (Home) button → **Vehicle Settings** → setting item.

List of Customizable Options

■ Driver Assist System Setup

Preceding vehicle proximity warning distance

Far/Normal^{*1}/Near

ACC vehicle ahead detected beep

ON/OFF^{*1}

Road departure mitigation setting

Early/Normal/Delayed^{*1}

Lane keep assist beep

ON/OFF^{*1}

Traffic sign recognition system display

ON^{*1}/OFF

Traffic sign recognition system over speed warning

ON^{*1}/OFF

Meter setup

Adjust outside temp. display

-3°C ~ ±0°C^{*1} ~ +3°C

“Trip A” reset timing

When charged/Manual reset^{*1}/When ignition is turned OFF

“Trip B” reset timing

When charged/Manual reset^{*1}/When ignition is turned OFF

Alarm volume control

Max/Mid^{*1}/Min

Reverse position alert tone

ON^{*1}/OFF

Keyless Access Setup

Keyless access light flash

ON^{*1}/OFF

Lighting Setup

Auto High-Beam

ON^{*1}/OFF

Interior light dimmer duration

60sec/30sec^{*1}/15sec

Rear Sensor Setting

ON^{*1}/OFF

*1: Default Setting

Turn by turn display

ON^{*1}/OFF

Rear seat reminder

ON^{*1}/OFF

Change in cruising range notification

ON^{*1}/OFF

Wheel angle indicator

ON^{*1}/OFF

Speed/distance units

km/h·km, mph·miles^{*1}

*1: Default Setting

*1: Default Setting

Headlight auto OFF timer

60sec/30sec/15sec^{*1}/0sec

Headlight integration with wipers

ON^{*1}/OFF

*1: Default Setting

■ Door Setup

Keyless lock notification

ON^{*1}/OFF

Auto Folding Door Mirror

ON^{*1}/OFF

*1: Default Setting

How to Customize the Profile Settings

You can add and change users, as well as customize user settings.

Press the  (Home) button, select **Profile Settings**, and select a setting item you want.

■ Change Profile

You can change and add users.

 User Information ▶P.177

■ Manage Profile

Use **Manage Profile** to change profile settings. Please confirm the details on the audio/information screen.

Specifications are subject to change via system updates, etc.

Defaulting All the Settings

Reset all the menu and customized settings to their factory defaults.

Only the Owner user can execute this command.

If the current profile is not the Owner user, please switch users.

 Switching Users ▶P.178

- If you perform **Factory Data Reset**, it will reset the preinstalled apps to their factory default.



When you transfer the vehicle to a third-party, reset all settings to default and delete all personal data.

■ Defaulting General Settings

- [1] Press the  (Home) button.
- [2] Select **General Settings**.
- [3] Select **System**.
- [4] Select **Factory Data Reset**.

» A confirmation message appears on the screen.

[5] Select **Continue**.

[6] Select **Reset** again to reset the settings.

■ Defaulting Vehicle Settings

[1] Press the  (Home) button.

[2] Select **Vehicle Settings**.

[3] Select **Default all**.

[4] Select **Yes**.

General Information on the Audio System

Compatible iPod, iPhone, and USB Flash Drives

The following information was made based on the most up-to-date information at the time this manual was written. There may be some discrepancies with updated versions of the audio system.

iPod and iPhone Model Compatibility

Model

Made for iPod touch (6th generation)/iPod touch (7th generation)

Made for iPhone 5s/iPhone 6/iPhone 6 Plus/iPhone 6s/iPhone 6s Plus/iPhone SE/iPhone 7/iPhone 7 Plus/iPhone 8/iPhone 8 Plus/iPhone X/iPhone XR/iPhone XS/iPhone XS Max/iPhone 11/iPhone 11 Pro/iPhone 11 Pro Max/iPhone SE (2nd generation)/iPhone 12 mini/iPhone 12/iPhone 12 Pro/iPhone 12 Pro Max/iPhone 13 mini/iPhone 13/iPhone 13 Pro/iPhone 13 Pro Max/iPhone SE (3rd generation)/iPhone 14/iPhone 14 Plus/iPhone 14 Pro/iPhone 14 Pro Max/15/15 Plus/15 Pro/15 Pro Max

This system may not work with all software versions of these devices.

Compatible USB Flash Drives

Please use a recommended USB flash drive of 256MB or higher formatted with FAT16 or FAT32.

- Some digital audio players may not be compatible.
- Some USB flash drives (e.g., a device with security lockout) may not work.
- Some software files may not allow for audio play or text data display.
- Some versions of MP3, WMA, AAC, FLAC, PCM/WAVE, Opus, MP4, AVI, MKV, 3GPP, WebM, or MPEG2-TS formats may be unsupported.
- Files on the USB flash drive are played in their stored order. This order may be different from the order displayed on your PC or device.
- Only AAC format files recorded with iTunes are playable on this unit.

Recommended Devices

MP4 File

Media	USB Flash Drive				
File extension (MP4 version)	.mp4/.m4v				
Compatible audio codec	AAC, MP3				
Compatible video codec	MPEG4-AVC (H.264)	H.263	H.265 HEVC	MPEG-4 SP	MPEG-2
Profile (MP4 version)	BaselineProfile/Level 3, MainProfile/Level 3.1 (MPEG4-AVC)	—	—	—	—
Bit rate	10 Mbps, 14 Mbps (MPEG4-AVC)	—	—	—	—
Maximum image	1,280 × 720 pixels (MPEG4-AVC)	—	—	—	—

AVI File

Media	USB Flash Drive				
File extension (AVI version)	.avi				
Compatible audio codec	AAC, MP3, WMA				
Compatible video codec	MPEG4-AVC (H.264)				
Profile (AVI version)	BaselineProfile/Level 3, MainProfile/Level 3.1 (MPEG4-AVC)				
Bit rate	10 Mbps, 14 Mbps (MPEG4-AVC)				
Maximum image	1,280 × 720 pixels (MPEG4-AVC)				

MKV File

Media	USB Flash Drive					
File extension (MKV version)	.mkv					
Compatible audio codec	AAC, MP3					
Compatible video codec	MPEG4-AVC (H.264)	H.263	H.265 HEVC	MPEG-2	VP8	VP9
Profile (MKV version)	BaselineProfile/Level 3, MainProfile/Level 3.1 (MPEG4-AVC)	—	—	—	—	—
Bit rate	10 Mbps, 14 Mbps (MPEG4-AVC)	—	—	—	—	—
Maximum image	1,280 × 720 pixels (MPEG4-AVC)	—	—	—	—	—

3GPP File

Media	USB Flash Drive		
File extension (3GPP version)	.3gp		
Compatible audio codec	MPEG-4, AAC LC (Low Complexity)		
Compatible video codec	H.263	H.264	MPEG-4 SP
Profile (3GPP version)	—	BaselineProfile/Level 3, MainProfile/Level 3.1 (MPEG4-AVC)	—
Bit rate	—	10 Mbps, 14 Mbps (MPEG4-AVC)	—
Maximum image	—	1,280 × 720 pixels (MPEG4-AVC)	—

WebM File

Media	USB Flash Drive	
File extension (WebM version)	.webm	
Compatible audio codec	Opus	
Compatible video codec	VP8	VP9
Profile (WebM version)	—	—
Bit rate	—	—
Maximum image	—	—

MPEG2-TS File

Media	USB Flash Drive	
File extension (MPEG2-TS version)	.ts	
Compatible audio codec	AAC, MP3	
Compatible video codec	MPEG-2	H.264 AVC
Profile (MPEG2-TS version)	—	BaselineProfile/Level 3, MainProfile/Level 3.1 (MPEG4-AVC)
Bit rate	—	10 Mbps, 14 Mbps (MPEG4-AVC)
Maximum image	—	1,280 × 720 pixels (MPEG4-AVC)

About Open Source Licences

To see the open source licence information, follow these steps.

- [1] Press the  (Home) button.
- [2] Select **General Settings**.
- [3] Select **Advanced Settings**.
- [4] Select **System**.
- [5] Select **Legal Information**.
- [6] Select **Third-party licenses**.

Licence Information

Bluetooth®

The *Bluetooth®* word mark and logos are registered trademarks owned by Bluetooth SIG, Inc. and any use of such marks by ALPS ALPINE CO., LTD. is under license. Other trademarks and trade names are those of their respective owners.

<https://www.bluetooth.com/develop-with-bluetooth/marketing-branding/>



Windows Media

This product is protected by certain intellectual property rights of Microsoft. Use or distribution of such technology outside of this product is prohibited without a license from Microsoft.

Apple

“Made for iPod,” and “Made for iPhone,” mean that an electronic accessory has been designed to connect specifically to iPod, or iPhone, respectively, and has been certified by the developer to meet Apple performance standards. Apple is not responsible for the operation of this device or its compliance with safety and regulatory standards. Please note that the use of this accessory with iPod, or iPhone, may affect wireless performance.

Apple, the Apple Logo, iPhone, iPod touch are trademarks of Apple Inc., registered in the U.S. and other countries. Apple CarPlay, iPod, iPhone, iTunes, Siri and Lightning are trademarks of Apple Inc. App Store is a service mark of Apple Inc.



MPEG

Mpeg4 Visual

THIS PRODUCT IS LICENSED UNDER THE MPEG-4 VISUAL PATENT PORTFOLIO LICENSE FOR THE PERSONAL AND NON-COMMERCIAL USE OF A CONSUMER FOR (i) ENCODING VIDEO IN COMPLIANCE WITH THE MPEG-4 VISUAL STANDARD ("MPEG-4 VIDEO") AND/OR (ii) DECODING MPEG-4 VIDEO THAT WAS ENCODED BY A CONSUMER ENGAGED IN A PERSONAL AND NONCOMMERCIAL ACTIVITY AND/OR WAS OBTAINED FROM A VIDEO PROVIDER LICENSED BY MPEG LA TO PROVIDE MPEG-4 VIDEO. NO LICENSE IS GRANTED OR SHALL BE IMPLIED FOR ANY OTHER USE. ADDITIONAL INFORMATION INCLUDING THAT RELATING TO PROMOTIONAL, INTERNAL AND COMMERCIAL USES AND LICENSING MAY BE OBTAINED FROM MPEG LA, LLC.

SEE [HTTP://WWW.MPEGLA.COM](http://www.mpegla.com).

AVC/H.264

THIS PRODUCT IS LICENSED UNDER THE AVC PATENT PORTFOLIO LICENSE FOR THE PERSONAL AND NONCOMMERCIAL USE OF A CONSUMER TO (i) ENCODE VIDEO IN COMPLIANCE WITH THE AVC STANDARD ("AVC VIDEO") AND/OR (ii) DECODE AVC VIDEO THAT WAS ENCODED BY A CONSUMER ENGAGED IN A PERSONAL AND NON-COMMERCIAL ACTIVITY AND/OR WAS OBTAINED FROM A VIDEO PROVIDER LICENSED TO PROVIDE AVC VIDEO. NO LICENSE IS GRANTED OR SHALL BE IMPLIED FOR ANY OTHER USE.

ADDITIONAL INFORMATION MAY BE OBTAINED FROM MPEG LA, L.L.C. SEE [HTTP://WWW.MPEGLA.COM](http://www.mpegla.com).

Legal Information on Apple CarPlay/Android Auto

OWNER'S MANUAL LICENCE/LIABILITY STATEMENTS

USE OF APPLE CARPLAY IS SUBJECT TO YOUR AGREEMENT TO THE CARPLAY TERMS OF USE, WHICH ARE INCLUDED AS PART OF THE APPLE iOS TERMS OF USE. IN SUMMARY, THE CARPLAY TERMS OF USE DISCLAIM APPLE AND ITS SERVICE PROVIDERS' LIABILITY IF THE SERVICES FAIL TO PERFORM CORRECTLY OR ARE DISCONTINUED, STRICTLY LIMIT APPLE AND ITS SERVICE PROVIDERS' OTHER LIABILITIES, DESCRIBE THE KINDS OF USER INFORMATION (INCLUDING, FOR EXAMPLE, VEHICLE LOCATION, VEHICLE SPEED, AND VEHICLE STATUS) BEING GATHERED AND STORED BY APPLE AND ITS SERVICE PROVIDERS, AND DISCLOSE CERTAIN POSSIBLE RISKS ASSOCIATED WITH THE USE OF CARPLAY, INCLUDING THE POTENTIAL FOR DRIVER DISTRACTION. SEE APPLE'S PRIVACY POLICY FOR DETAILS REGARDING APPLE'S USE AND HANDLING OF DATA UPLOADED BY CARPLAY.

USE OF ANDROID AUTO IS SUBJECT TO YOUR AGREEMENT TO THE ANDROID AUTO TERMS OF USE WHICH MUST BE AGREED TO WHEN THE ANDROID AUTO APPLICATION IS DOWNLOADED TO YOUR ANDROID PHONE. IN SUMMARY, THE ANDROID AUTO TERMS OF USE DISCLAIM GOOGLE AND ITS SERVICE PROVIDERS' LIABILITY IF THE SERVICES FAIL TO PERFORM CORRECTLY OR ARE DISCONTINUED, STRICTLY LIMIT GOOGLE AND ITS SERVICE PROVIDERS' OTHER LIABILITIES, DESCRIBE THE KINDS OF USER INFORMATION (INCLUDING, FOR EXAMPLE, VEHICLE LOCATION, VEHICLE SPEED, AND VEHICLE STATUS) BEING GATHERED AND STORED BY GOOGLE AND ITS SERVICE PROVIDERS, AND DISCLOSE CERTAIN POSSIBLE RISKS ASSOCIATED WITH THE USE OF ANDROID AUTO, INCLUDING THE POTENTIAL FOR DRIVER DISTRACTION. SEE GOOGLE'S PRIVACY POLICY FOR DETAILS REGARDING GOOGLE'S USE AND HANDLING OF DATA UPLOADED BY ANDROID AUTO.

DISCLAIMER OF WARRANTIES; LIMITATION ON LIABILITY

YOU EXPRESSLY ACKNOWLEDGE AND AGREE THAT USE OF APPLE CARPLAY OR ANDROID AUTO (“THE APPLICATIONS”) IS AT YOUR SOLE RISK AND THAT THE ENTIRE RISK AS TO SATISFACTORY QUALITY, PERFORMANCE, ACCURACY AND EFFORT IS WITH YOU TO THE MAXIMUM EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW, AND THAT THE APPLICATIONS AND INFORMATION ON THE APPLICATIONS IS PROVIDED “AS IS” AND “AS AVAILABLE,” WITH ALL FAULTS AND WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, AND HONDA HEREBY DISCLAIMS ALL WARRANTIES AND CONDITIONS WITH RESPECT TO THE APPLICATIONS AND INFORMATION ON THE APPLICATIONS, EITHER EXPRESS, IMPLIED OR STATUTORY, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES AND/OR CONDITIONS OF MERCHANTABILITY, SATISFACTORY QUALITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, ACCURACY, QUIET ENJOYMENT, AND NONINFRINGEMENT OF THIRD PARTY RIGHTS. NO ORAL OR WRITTEN INFORMATION OR ADVICE GIVEN BY HONDA OR AN AUTHORIZED REPRESENTATIVE SHALL CREATE A WARRANTY. AS EXAMPLES, AND WITHOUT LIMITATION, HONDA DISCLAIMS ANY WARRANTY REGARDING THE ACCURACY OF DATA PROVIDED BY THE APPLICATIONS, SUCH AS THE ACCURACY OF DIRECTIONS, ESTIMATED TRAVEL TIME, SPEED LIMITS, ROAD CONDITIONS, NEWS, WEATHER, TRAFFIC, OR OTHER CONTENT PROVIDED BY APPLE, GOOGLE, THEIR AFFILIATES, OR THIRD PARTY PROVIDERS; HONDA DOES NOT GUARANTEE AGAINST LOSS OF APPLICATION DATA, WHICH MAY BE LOST AT ANY TIME; HONDA DOES NOT GUARANTEE THAT THE APPLICATIONS OR ANY SERVICES PROVIDED THROUGH THEM WILL BE PROVIDED AT ALL TIMES OR THAT ANY OR ALL SERVICES WILL BE AVAILABLE AT ANY PARTICULAR TIME OR LOCATION. FOR EXAMPLE, SERVICES MAY BE SUSPENDED OR INTERRUPTED WITHOUT NOTICE FOR REPAIR, MAINTENANCE, SECURITY FIXES, UPDATES, ETC., SERVICES MAY BE UNAVAILABLE IN YOUR AREA OR LOCATION, ETC. IN ADDITION, YOU UNDERSTAND THAT CHANGES IN THIRD PARTY TECHNOLOGY OR GOVERNMENT REGULATION MAY RENDER THE SERVICES AND/OR APPLICATIONS OBSOLETE AND/OR UNUSABLE.

TO THE EXTENT NOT PROHIBITED BY LAW, IN NO EVENT SHALL HONDA OR ITS AFFILIATES BE LIABLE FOR PERSONAL INJURY, OR ANY INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, INDIRECT OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES WHATSOEVER, INCLUDING, WITHOUT LIMITATION, DAMAGES FOR LOSS OF PROFITS, CORRUPTION OR LOSS OF DATA, FAILURE TO TRANSMIT OR RECEIVE ANY DATA, BUSINESS INTERRUPTION OR ANY OTHER COMMERCIAL DAMAGES OR LOSSES, ARISING OUT OF OR RELATED TO THE APPLICATIONS OR YOUR USE OF OR INABILITY TO USE THE APPLICATIONS OR INFORMATION ON THE APPLICATIONS, HOWEVER CAUSED, REGARDLESS OF THE THEORY OF LIABILITY (CONTRACT, TORT OR OTHERWISE) AND EVEN IF HONDA WERE ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES. SOME REGIONS AND JURISDICTIONS MAY DISALLOW THE EXCLUSION OR LIMITATION OF LIABILITY FOR DAMAGES, SO THESE LIMITATIONS AND EXCLUSIONS MAY NOT APPLY TO YOU. THE FOREGOING LIMITATIONS WILL APPLY EVEN IF THE ABOVE STATED REMEDY FAILS OF ITS ESSENTIAL PURPOSE.

Safety Driving Assist System

Honda SENSING

About Honda SENSING	208
Device for Operating Each Function and Gauge	
Content	210
Front Wide View Camera	212
Sonar Sensors	213

Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS)

About Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS)	216
System Operation	216
Operating Conditions	217
System On and Off	218
System Limitations	219

Low Speed Braking Control

About Low Speed Braking Control	223
System Operation	224
System On and Off	225
System Limitations	225

Road Departure Mitigation System

About Road Departure Mitigation System	227
System Operation	227
Operating Conditions	228
System On and Off	229
System Limitations	229

Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow

About Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow	232
How to Activate the ACC with Low Speed Follow	233
System Limitations	238

Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)

About Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)	241
---	-----

Operating Conditions	242
How to Activate the LKAS	242
System Limitations	243

Traffic Jam Assist

About Traffic Jam Assist	245
Operating Conditions	246
How to Activate the Traffic Jam Assist	246
System Limitations	247

Traffic Sign Recognition System

About Traffic Sign Recognition System	250
System Operation	250
System Limitations	251

Parking Sensor System

About Parking Sensor System	254
System On and Off	254
Screen Operation	255
Operations When an Obstacle Has Been Detected	255
System Limitations	257

Honda SENSING

About Honda SENSING

Assists with functions such as acceleration, braking, and steering in order to reduce the burden on the driver, as well as help to avoid or reduce the severity of collisions. Honda SENSING has the following functions:

 About Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS) ▶P.216

 About Low Speed Braking Control ▶P.223

 About Road Departure Mitigation System ▶P.227

 About Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow ▶P.232

 About Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) ▶P.241

 About Traffic Jam Assist ▶P.245

 About Traffic Sign Recognition System ▶P.250

 About Parking Sensor System ▶P.254

 Auto High-Beam ▶P.122

- Features that use the front wide view camera will operate about 15 seconds after the power mode is set to ON.

WARNING

Only use Honda SENSING as a driving assistance system.

Honda SENSING is not an autonomous driving system. This is only a system to assist the driver. There are limits to the recognition and control capabilities of each of its functions.

Overreliance on the system may lead to accidents such as collisions, which may result in death or serious injury. Always check your surroundings and drive safely by maintaining a sufficient following distance.



If you set the power mode to ON while the vehicle is moving, such as when on a turntable in a parking lot, some functions may not work.

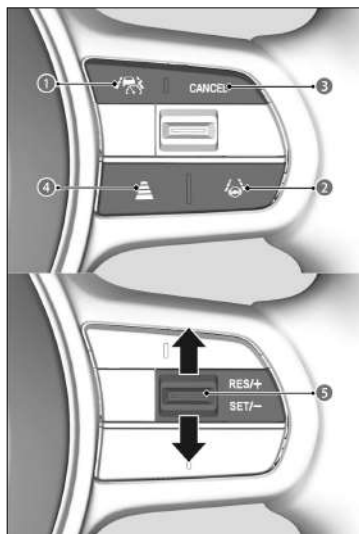


To ensure proper operation of the system, observe the following:

- All the tyres are of the same specified size, type and brand, and that they are evenly worn.
- Do not modify the suspension.

Device for Operating Each Function and Gauge Content

Operating Device



1 Button

Press to activate standby mode for the following features:

- ACC with Low Speed Follow
- LKAS and Traffic Jam Assist

Or press to cancel these systems.

2 Button

When ACC with Low Speed Follow is operating, press to activate or cancel LKAS and Traffic Jam Assist.

3 **CANCEL** Button

Press to cancel the following features:

- ACC with Low Speed Follow
- LKAS and Traffic Jam Assist

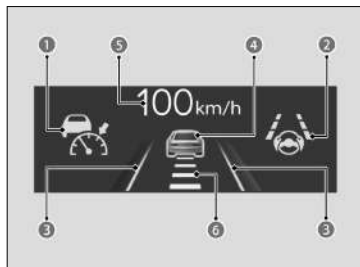
4 Interval Button

Press to change the ACC with Low Speed Follow following-interval.

5 **RES/+ / SET/-** Switch

- Press the **RES/+ / SET/-** switch up to set or resume the ACC with Low Speed Follow or increase the vehicle speed.
- Press the **RES/+ / SET/-** switch down to set the ACC with Low Speed Follow or decrease the vehicle speed.
- LKAS and Traffic Jam Assist will be activated or resumed.

Gauge Content



You can see the current state of each function.

1 Indicates that ACC with Low Speed Follow is ready to be activated.

- Green, White/Green: The system is on.
» White/Green indicates that a vehicle is not detected ahead.
- White: The system is standby.
- Amber: There is a problem with the system.

2 Indicates that LKAS or Traffic Jam Assist is ready to be activated.

- Green: The system is operating.
- White: The system is standby.
- Amber: There is a problem with the system.

3 Indicates that LKAS or Traffic Jam Assist is activated and whether or not traffic lane lines are detected.

- Green Lines: The system is operating.
- White Lines: Traffic lane lines are detected.
- Amber Line: Lane departure is detected.

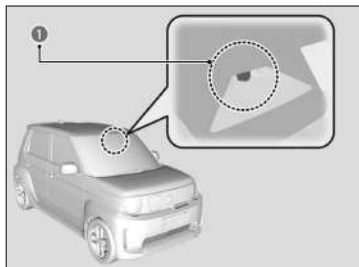
4 Indicates whether or not a vehicle is detected ahead.

5 Indicates that ACC with Low Speed Follow shows the set vehicle speed.

- White: Set Vehicle Speed
- Grey: Prior Set Speed

6 Indicates that ACC with Low Speed Follow shows the set vehicle interval.

Front Wide View Camera



The camera (1) is mounted at the top of the windshield.

Handling of the Camera

- Avoid high interior temperatures to prevent the camera's sensing system from shutting off.
 - » It is recommended to find a shady area or face the front of the vehicle away from the sun when parking.
- To avoid concentrating heat on the camera, do not cover the camera when using a reflective sun shade.
- Never apply a film or attach any objects to the windshield, the bonnet, or the front grille that could obstruct the camera's field of vision and cause the system to operate abnormally.
- Do not scratch, nick, or cause any other damage to the windshield.
 - » Damage within the camera's field of vision can cause the system to operate abnormally. If this occurs, we recommend that you replace the windshield with a genuine Honda replacement windshield.
 - » After replacing the windshield, have a dealer recalibrate the camera. Proper calibration of the camera is necessary for the system to operate properly.
 - » Making even minor repairs within the camera's field of vision or installing an aftermarket replacement windshield may also cause the system to operate abnormally.
- Do not place an object on the top of the instrument panel.
 - » It may reflect onto the windshield and prevent the system from detecting lane lines properly.
- Do not remove the camera, as it may cause the system to not work properly.
- Use the demister as needed to prevent fogging of the windshield.
- Do not install anything on the bonnet or front grille that obstructs the camera's view.

If the **Some driver assist systems cannot operate: Camera temperature too high** message appears:

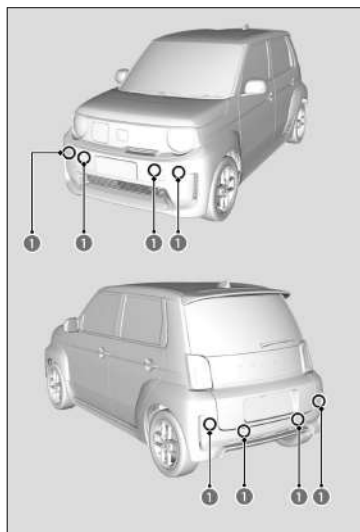
- Use the climate control system to cool down the interior and, if necessary, also use demister mode with the airflow directed towards the camera.
- Start driving the vehicle to lower the windshield temperature, which cools down the area around the camera.

If the **Some driver assist system cannot operate: Clean front windscreen or poor viewing condition.** message appears:

- Park your vehicle in a safe place, and make sure the windscreen is clean. Clean the windscreen if it is dirty.
- It may also appear in bad weather such as rain, fog, or snow, or when camera visibility is poor such as at night, in a tunnel, at dawn, or at dusk when the ambient conditions are dark.

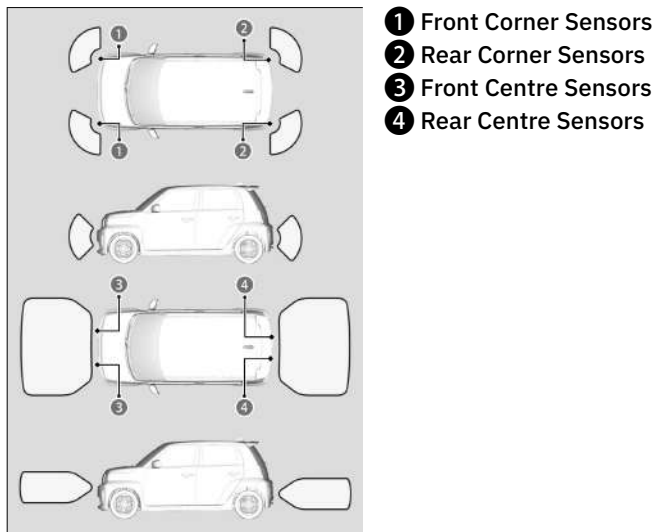
! If the message does not disappear after the vehicle has been driven for a while, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

Sonar Sensors



The sonar sensors (1) are situated in the front bumper, and rear bumper.

Detection Range



Handling of the Sonar Sensors

For the sonar sensors to work properly, do not:

- Hit the area around the sensors.
- Place stickers or other objects on or around the sensors.
- Attempt to take apart any sensor.
- Put any accessories on or around the sensors.

If the **Low speed braking control problem. Parking sensor obstructed.** message appears:

- Park your vehicle in a safe place, and make sure the sonar sensors or around the sensors is clean.

! If the message does not disappear after the vehicle has been driven for a while, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.



If the vehicle is involved in any of the following situations, the sonar sensors may not work properly. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer:

- A sensor has been subjected to shock.
- Work needs to be done to the area around a sensor.
- The front or rear bumper has made contact with a hill, parking block, curb, embankment, etc.
- The vehicle has been involved in frontal or rear collision.
- The vehicle has been driven through a deep puddle.

Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS)

About Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS)

The system assists the driver's braking operation to help to avoid collisions or reduce the severity of a collision with vehicles (including motorcycles), pedestrians, and bicycles.

Important Safety Reminder

The CMBS is designed to reduce the severity of an unavoidable collision. It does not prevent collisions nor stop the vehicle automatically. It is still your responsibility to operate the brake pedal and steering wheel appropriately according to the driving conditions.

 When performing vehicle maintenance or inspection using a chassis dynamometer or free roller, turn off the CMBS.

 Have your vehicle checked by a dealer if you find any unusual behavior of the system (e.g., the warning message appears too frequently).

System Operation

The system starts monitoring the roadway ahead when your vehicle speed is about 5 km/h (3 mph) or above and will search for a vehicle (including motorcycles), pedestrian, or moving bicycle in front of you. CMBS operates when the system determines there is a possibility of a collision.

 Front Wide View Camera ▶ P.212

The system has three alert stages for a possible collision.

» Depending on circumstances, the CMBS may not go through all of the stages before initiating the last stage.

<Stage one> Situations where there is a risk of a collision with the vehicle ahead of you

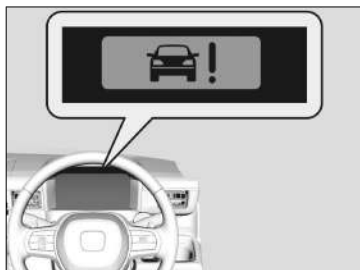
The visual alert flashes. If the distance between your vehicle and the vehicle in front of you continues to decrease, the audible alert sounds in addition to the visual alert flashing.

<Stage two> Situations where risk of a collision has increased and time to respond is reduced

Visual and audible alerts come on and the brakes are lightly applied.

<Stage three> Situations where it is difficult to avoid a collision

Visual and audible alerts come on and the brakes are forcefully applied.



The system provides visual and audible alerts of a possible collision, and stops if the collision is avoided.

» Take appropriate action to prevent a collision (apply the brakes, change lanes, etc.).

- When the CMBS applies the brakes, your vehicle's brake lights will illuminate.
- After CMBS is activated and your vehicle stops or decelerates, CMBS will be deactivated based on the system's judgment.
- The CMBS may be cancelled when you operate the steering wheel, brake, or accelerator pedal to avoid a collision.
- When the CMBS is activated, it will continue to operate even if the accelerator pedal is partially depressed. However, it will be cancelled if the accelerator pedal is fully depressed.



You can change the distance (**Far/Normal/Near**) between vehicles at which the system's earliest collision alert will come on. When in **Far**, visual and audible alerts come on at a longer distance from a vehicle ahead than in **Normal** setting, and in **Near**, at a shorter distance than in **Normal**.

Customized Features ▶ P.190

Operating Conditions

The conditions and targets of operation for CMBS are as follows:

■ When going straight

When your vehicle speed is about 5 km/h (3 mph) or more, and the speed difference with the target is about 5 km/h (3 mph) or more:

- The vehicle (including motorcycles) ahead of you

When your vehicle speed is about 5-100 km/h (3-62 mph), and the speed difference with the target is about 5 km/h (3 mph) or more:

- Stopped vehicle (including motorcycle)

- Oncoming vehicle
- Approaching vehicle from the side
- Pedestrian
- Moving bicycle

■ When turning left or right (only when there is a risk of a head-on collision)

When your vehicle speed is about 5-30 km/h (3-18 mph), and the speed difference with the target is about 5 km/h (3 mph) or more:

- Oncoming vehicle (including motorcycles)*1
- Pedestrian
- Moving bicycle

*1: Activates only when turning into the oncoming lane.

The system is also designed to detect pedestrians. However, this pedestrian detection feature may not activate or may not detect a pedestrian in front of your vehicle under certain conditions. Refer to the ones indicating the pedestrian detection limitations from the list.

 System Limitations ▶P.219

Automatic Shut Off

The CMBS may automatically shut itself off and the safety support indicator (amber) and collision mitigation braking system (CMBS) indicator (amber) come and stay on when:

- You drive off-road or on a mountain road, or curved and winding road for an extended period.
- Driving in bad weather (rain, fog, snow, etc.).
- Driving with the parking brake applied.
- The front of the camera is obstructed by dirt, fog, rain, mud, wet snow, accessories, decals, stickers, film, etc.
- An abnormal tyre condition is detected (incorrect tyre size, flat tyre, etc.).

Once the conditions that caused the CMBS to shut off improve or are addressed (e.g., cleaning), the system comes back on.

System On and Off

You can turn the system on and off using the driver information interface.

 Switching the Display ▶P.271

 Safety Support ▶P.277

- Even if the system is turned off, it will automatically turn on every time the power mode is turned on.
- You cannot turn the CMBS off while driving.

System Limitations

In the following situations, the system may be unable to correctly identify detectable targets or road conditions, potentially causing the CMBS to operate improperly.

Environmental conditions

- Driving in bad weather (rain, fog, snow, etc.).
- Sudden changes between light and dark, such as an entrance or exit of a tunnel.
- There is little contrast between detectable targets and the background.
- Driving into low sunlight (e.g., at dawn or dusk).
- Strong light is reflected onto a detectable target or roadway.
- Water is being splashed or snow is being flung by the preceding vehicle (including motorcycles).
- Driving at night or in a dark place such as a tunnel (due to low-light conditions, detectable targets may not be illuminated).

Roadway conditions

- On snowy or wet roads with blurred lanes, tyre tracks, light reflections, water spray, high contrast, etc.
- Driving on curvy, winding, undulating, or sloping roads.
- The road is hilly or the vehicle is approaching the crest of a hill.
- Your vehicle is strongly shaken on uneven road surfaces.

Vehicle conditions

- Driving at night or in a dark place (e.g., a tunnel) with the headlights off.
- When lighting is weak due to dirt covering the headlight lenses, or there is poor visibility in a dark place due to the headlights being improperly adjusted.
- The front of the camera is obstructed by dirt, fog, rain, mud, wet snow, accessories, decals, stickers, film, etc.
- Camera vision is blocked by drops of water from the window washer, or by the wiper blades.
- There is residue on the windscreen from the windscreen wipers.

- The inside of the windscreen is fogged.
- An abnormal tyre or wheel condition (incorrect sizes, varied sizes or construction, improperly inflated, etc.).
- The vehicle is tilted due to heavy load in the luggage area or rear seats.
- The suspension has been modified.
- Driving with the parking brake applied.
- Operation of the vehicle is unstable due to a slippery road, etc.
- Tyre chains are installed.

Examples of limitations on the correct detection of the system due to the condition of detectable targets

- The distance between your vehicle and the detectable target is too short.
- The detectable target suddenly cuts in front of or jumps out in front of you.
- The bicycle is stopped.
- The oncoming vehicle or vehicle ahead of you is sideways or facing diagonally.
- When the detectable target blends in with the background, preventing the system from recognising it.
- When several pedestrians are moving ahead of you in a group.
- When several bicycles are moving ahead of you in a group.
- When a pedestrian or moving bicycle crosses the road too quickly.
- A pedestrian or moving bicycle approaches from the opposite direction.
- The headlights of the vehicle ahead of you or oncoming vehicle are lit on one side or not lit on either side in a dark place.
- When part of a pedestrian (heads, limbs, etc.) is hidden by a carried object.
- When a pedestrian is bent over or squatting, when their hands are raised, or when they are running.
- When the pedestrian is shorter than about 1 metre (3.3 feet) or taller than about 2 metres (6.6 feet) in height.
- When the pedestrian is pushing a stroller or bicycle.
- A vehicle (including motorcycles) is approaching diagonally from the side.
- A specially-shaped vehicle (such as a tank lorry or a lorry without a luggage) is approaching from the side.
- A vehicle (including motorcycles) approaching from the side is driving on a curve or hill.

Examples of other limitations on detection or system operation

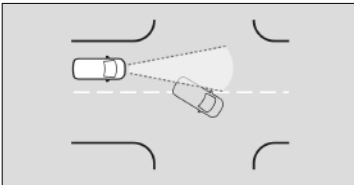
- When the vehicle ahead of you is a small motorcycle, motorcycle with a sidecar, wheelchair, or other specially shaped vehicle.
- When a vehicle is lower in the rear than the front such as lorries that are not carrying a luggage, or a narrow vehicle.
- When the detectable target is not in front of the vehicle.

- The speed difference between your vehicle and the detectable target is significantly large.
- The speed difference between your vehicle and the detectable target is too small and the distance between your vehicle and them is too short.
- The speed difference between your vehicle and a detectable target approaching from the side is significantly large.
- The speed difference between your vehicle and a detectable target approaching from the side is too small and the distance between your vehicle and them is too short.
- When a vehicle (including motorcycles) or moving bicycle in front of you slows suddenly.
- When the driver operates the brake pedal and steering wheel to avoid a collision.
- When you approach the detectable target while accelerating rapidly or operating the steering wheel (except when turning right at an intersection etc.)^{*1}.
- When the moving bicycle is a child-sized bicycle, folding bicycle, three-wheeler or other bicycle with small tyres, or a long bicycle like a tandem bicycle.
- When the system cannot correctly identify the shape of the detectable target.
- When the minimum ground clearance of a vehicle that is ahead of you or approaching from the side is extremely high.
- When turning left or right and your turn signal is not activated in the same direction you are turning.

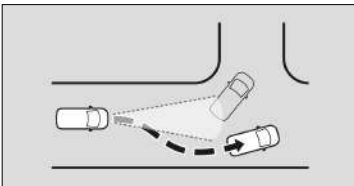
^{*1}: When there is a possibility of a frontal collision with the oncoming vehicle while turning right, the CMBS is activated. However, it may not be activated if you suddenly turn the steering wheel.

With little chance of a collision

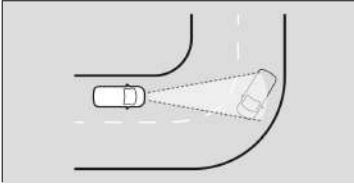
Even if there is little chance of a collision, the CMBS may activate in the following situations when the system determines that there is a possibility of collision.



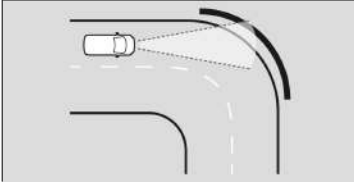
- When your vehicle approaches a vehicle ahead (including a motorcycle) that is turning left or right.



- Your vehicle approaches another vehicle (including motorcycles) ahead of you and you change lanes to pass.



- When driving through curves, your vehicle comes to a point where the oncoming vehicle is right in front of you.



- When there are detectable targets or any structures around the curved road.

- When your vehicle approaches a detectable target.
- When detectable targets are passing in front of you.
- When you drive under a low structure or through a narrow gate at high speed.
- When approaching a stationary vehicle (including motorcycles) or walls, such as when parking.
- A vehicle (including motorcycles) approaches from the side as it is driving through a curve.
- You pass by a detectable target that approaching from the side in front of you.
- You attempt to pass in front of a vehicle (including motorcycles) or bicycle while you are turning left or right.
- A vehicle (including motorcycles) or bicycle is attempting to pass in front of your vehicle while you are turning left or right.
- A detectable target enters the path of your vehicle and stops in front of you, or changes direction.
- When you are turning left or right, a crossing pedestrian enters the path of your vehicle and stops in front of you, or changes direction.
- When your vehicle passes near a detectable target.
- Roadway objects or structures such as guard rails, poles, trees, parked vehicles, buildings, walls, etc., or road markings and road lines are misinterpreted as detectable targets.

Low Speed Braking Control

About Low Speed Braking Control

The Low Speed Braking Control system has Low Speed Brake, Collision Mitigation Throttle Control, and Rear Collision Mitigation Throttle Control features. If the sonar sensors detect an obstacle such as a wall, and the system determines that there is a risk of collision, then the system suppresses torque and/or applies the brakes, helping to avoid or reduce the severity of a collision.

Sonar Sensors ▶ P.213

- If the system activates in a situation where you do not want automatic brake application (such as when the vehicle is between two railroad crossing gates), simply press the brake pedal to deactivate the system and then continue to drive as intended.
- If the system is activated by curbs/parking curbs or level differences on the road and you are unable to park or clear them, turn the system off.
- In order to prevent the system from activating when not needed, always turn it off during vehicle maintenance; when loading on ships, trucks, and so on; when using a chassis dynamometer or free rollers for inspection; or when washing the car in a conveyor type car wash machine.
- After Low Speed Braking Control has activated once, it will not operate again even if you approach the same obstacle. The vehicle must be driven a certain distance before the system can be activated again.
- The system operates separately when moving forward and when reversing. (For example, if it activates when moving forward, it can be activated again immediately if reversing.)
- If Low Speed Braking Control function is activated, the vehicle must be driven a certain distance before Collision Mitigation Throttle Control and Rear Collision Mitigation Throttle Control can be reactivated.

WARNING

The Low Speed Braking Control System cannot avoid all collisions and may not reduce damage in each situation. Overreliance on the system may result in a collision with serious injury or death. Always check your surroundings, your shift position, and your pedal use. Driver remains responsible for safely operating the vehicle.

System Operation

Low Speed Brake function

The Low Speed Brake function provides a visual and audible alert when the vehicle is moving between approximately 2 and 10 km/h (1 and 6 mph) and there is the possibility of a collision with a detected wall or other obstacles, as well as providing assistance with braking.



1 The vehicle applies brake

» Depress brake pedal as soon as the system activates.

The vehicle will release the brake and start moving a few seconds after the system is activated. To keep the vehicle stopped, keep the brake pedal depressed or put the transmission into **P**.

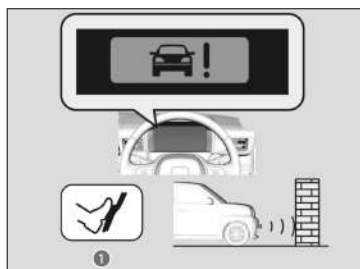


You can turn off the rear parking sensors to disable activation of the low speed brake function when reversing.

Customized Features P.190

Collision Mitigation Throttle Control and Rear Collision Mitigation Throttle Control

When the vehicle is stopped or moving at less than 10 km/h (6 mph) and there is an obstacle such as a wall near the front or back of the vehicle, if the accelerator is depressed more than necessary, the system will inform you with a visual and audible alert. At the same time, the system will prevent sudden forward or backwards movement by limiting the output, then Low Speed Brake will activate.



① Accidental depression of the accelerator/ Limiting the output of the power system

The system will not activate in the following situations:

- **When moving forward:** When on a steep slope or the shift position is in **P**, **R**, or **N**.
- **When reversing:** When on a steep slope or the shift position is in a position other than **R**.

The system will be cancelled under any of the following conditions:

- When the accelerator is no longer depressed.
- When the accelerator is depressed for approximately four seconds.
- When the brake pedal is depressed.



You can turn off the rear parking sensors to disable activation of the Rear Collision Mitigation Throttle Control when reversing.

[Q Customized Features](#) ▶ P.190

System On and Off

You can turn the system on and off using the driver information interface.

[Q Switching the Display](#) ▶ P.271

[Q Safety Support](#) ▶ P.277

- Even if the system is turned off, it will automatically turn on every time the power mode is turned on.

System Limitations

The system may not operate correctly under the following conditions:

■ Examples of obstacles the sonar sensor cannot detect

- Obstacles that do not reflect sound waves well, such as people, snow, cloth, sponges, etc.
- Thin obstacles such as fences, bicycles, sign posts, etc.
- Short or small obstacles.

- Obstacles immediately in front of the bumper.
- Moving objects or obstacles that suddenly enter the road.
- Obstacles that are not perpendicular to the ground.

Examples of situations where the sonar sensors cannot detect obstacles

- The sonar sensor is dirty (covered by snow, water, mud, etc.).
- The vehicle is too hot or cold.
- The steering wheel is turned sharply when approaching the obstacle at an angle.

Examples of other cases where the system may not work correctly

- The vehicle is tilted due to heavy load in the luggage area or rear seats.
- Bad weather conditions such as heavy rain, fog, snow, sandstorms, etc.
- The ambient temperature/humidity is too high or low.
- When going down a very steep slope.
- When driving off-road such as on dirt, grass, or rocks.
- When close to other vehicles with sonar sensors or other objects that emit ultrasonic waves.
- An abnormal tyre or wheel condition (incorrect sizes, varied sizes or construction, improperly inflated, etc.).
- The suspension has been modified.

Situations where the system may activate even without risk of a collision

- When passing through short or narrow gates.
- When driving on uneven surfaces, grassy areas, or places with steps.
- When a sloped pillar or wall is protruding from a high position.
- When there are obstacles next to the road.
- When driving toward flags, curtains, tree branches, railroad crossing bars, etc.
- When driving on flooded roads.



Do not put any accessories on or around the sensors.

If you put any accessories (such as a bicycle rack) on or around the rear sensors, the Low Speed Braking Control System may activate if it detects these accessories as an obstacle. In this case, turn off the rear sensor.

 Customized Features ▶ P.190

Road Departure Mitigation System

About Road Departure Mitigation System

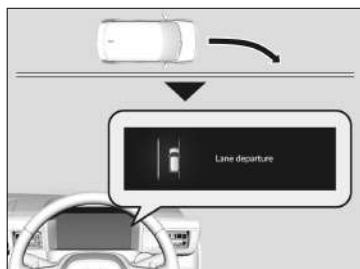
Alerts and helps to assist you when the system detects a possibility of your vehicle crossing over detected lane markings, or approaching the outer edge of the pavement (into grass or gravel road shoulder) or a detected oncoming vehicle.

🔍 Front Wide View Camera ▶P.212

Important Safety Reminder

Like all assistance systems, the Road Departure Mitigation system has limitations. Overreliance on the Road Departure Mitigation system may result in a collision. It is always your responsibility to keep the vehicle within your driving lane.

System Operation



The system monitors left and right lane markings in white (or yellow), the outer edge of the pavement (bordered by grass or gravel road shoulder), or a detected oncoming vehicle. If your vehicle approaches any detected lane markings, the outer edge of the pavement (bordered by grass or gravel), or a detected oncoming vehicle when the turn signals have not been engaged, the system activates.

» If the system cannot detect lane markings (in white or yellow), no assistance will be provided to avoid approaching oncoming vehicles.

In addition to a visual alert, the system assists with steering and alerts you with rapid steering wheel vibrations to help you to remain within the detected lane.

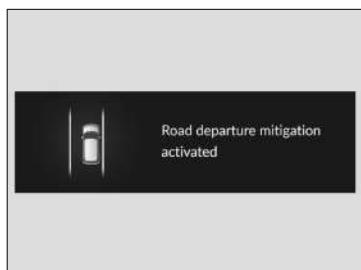
The system cancels assisting operations when you turn the steering wheel to avoid crossing over detected lane markings or approaching the outer edge of the pavement (into grass or gravel road shoulder) or an oncoming vehicle.



If the system operates several times without detecting driver response, the system beeps to alert you. After that, the Road Departure Mitigation System Steering Assist Auto OFF indicator (1) comes on, the Road Departure Mitigation steering assist is temporarily stopped, and the system will only alert you with the warning sound.

» After a few minutes, the indicator goes off and the system is fully restored.

- The Road Departure Mitigation system may automatically shut off and the safety support indicator (amber) and Road Departure Mitigation indicator (amber) come and stay on.
- There are times when you may not notice the Road Departure Mitigation system functions due to your operation of the vehicle, or road surface conditions.
- The Road Departure Mitigation system function can be impacted when the vehicle is driven on the inside edge of a curve, or outside of a lane, or driven in a narrow lane.



If LKAS or Traffic Jam Assist is off, the message may appear if the system has determined that there is a possibility of your vehicle crossing over detected lane markings, the outer edge of the pavement (into a grass or gravel road shoulder), or oncoming vehicle.

Operating Conditions

The system activates when all of the following conditions are met:

- The vehicle is on a straight or slightly curved road.
- The turn signals are off.
- The system determines that the driver is not actively accelerating, braking, or steering.
- The vehicle is travelling between about 72 and 180 km/h (45 and 112 mph).
 - » When oncoming vehicles are running: The vehicle is travelling between about 30 and 180 km/h (18 and 112 mph).
- The outer edge of the pavement is grass or gravel road shoulder and your vehicle is travelling between about 30 and 180 km/h (18 and 112 mph).



You can set the timing for Road Departure Mitigation System activation.

 Customized Features ▶ P.190

System On and Off

You can turn the system on and off using the driver information interface.

 Switching the Display ▶P.271

 Safety Support ▶P.277

- When you turn off the system, it will remain off until you turn it back on.

System Limitations

The system may not work properly under the following conditions.

Environmental conditions

- There is little contrast between lane lines and the roadway surface.
- Driving in bad weather (rain, fog, snow, etc.).
- Driving on a snowy or wet roadway.
- Driving into low sunlight (e.g., at dawn or dusk).
- Shadows of adjacent objects (trees, buildings, guard rails, vehicles, etc.) are parallel to white (or yellow) lines.
- Sudden changes between light and dark, such as the entrance or exit of a tunnel or the shadows of trees, buildings, etc.
- Strong light is reflected onto the roadway.
- Driving at night or in a dark place such as a tunnel (due to low-light conditions, lane lines, the road surface, or oncoming vehicles may not be illuminated).
- The distance between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead of you is too short, and lane lines and the road surface are not visible.
- The outer edge of the road is bordered by objects, materials, etc. other than grass or gravel.

Roadway conditions

- Driving on a road with temporary lane markings.
- Faint, multiple, or varied lane markings are visible on the roadway due to road repairs or deteriorated lane markings.
- The roadway has merging, split, or crossing lines, such as at an intersection or crosswalk.
- The lane markings are extremely narrow, wide, or changing.
- Part of the lane markings are hidden by an object, such as a vehicle.
- The road is hilly or the vehicle is approaching the crest of a hill.
- Your vehicle is strongly shaken on uneven road surfaces.
- When objects on the road (curb, guard rail, pylons, etc.) are recognised as white (or yellow) lines.

- Driving on rough or unpaved roads, or over bumpy surfaces.
- Driving on roads with double lane lines.
- Driving on snowy or slippery roads.
- Passing through a junction.
- The pavement is only partially visible due to snow or puddles on the road.
- Driving on unpaved or rutted roads.
- White (or yellow) lines are not recognised correctly due to road conditions such as curves, twists, or hills.

Vehicle conditions

- When the driver operates the brake pedal and steering wheel.
- When lighting is weak due to dirt covering the headlight lenses, or there is poor visibility in a dark place due to the headlights being improperly adjusted.
- Driving at night or in a dark place (e.g., a tunnel) with the headlights off.
- The front of the camera is obstructed by dirt, fog, rain, mud, wet snow, accessories, decals, stickers, film, etc.
- There is residue on the windscreen from the windscreen wipers.
- The inside of the windscreen is fogged.
- An abnormal tyre or wheel condition (incorrect sizes, varied sizes or construction, improperly inflated, etc.).
- The vehicle is tilted due to heavy load in the luggage area or rear seats.
- The suspension has been modified.
- Tyre chains are installed.

Examples of limitations on detection due to the condition of oncoming vehicles

- The oncoming vehicle or vehicle ahead of you is sideways.
- The oncoming vehicle jumps out in front of you.
- When the oncoming vehicle blends in with the background, preventing the system from recognising it.
- The headlights of an oncoming vehicle are lit on one side or not lit on either side in a dark place.
- The distance between your vehicle and the oncoming vehicle is too short.
- Part of the oncoming vehicle is not visible due to the vehicle ahead of you.
- There are multiple oncoming lanes or turning lanes.
- The vehicle in the adjacent lane is parked or moving at an extremely slow speed.
- When the oncoming vehicle is specially-shaped.
- When the camera cannot correctly identify the shape of the oncoming vehicle.

■ With Little Chance of a Collision

The Road Departure Mitigation system may activate in the below conditions.

- When driving through curves, your vehicle comes to a point where an oncoming vehicle is right in front of you.

Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow

About Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow

Helps to maintain a constant vehicle speed and a set following-interval behind a vehicle detected ahead of yours and, if the detected vehicle comes to a stop, can decelerate and stop your vehicle, without you having to keep your foot on the brake or the accelerator.

 Front Wide View Camera ▶ P.212

WARNING

Improper use of ACC with Low Speed Follow can lead to a crash. Use ACC with Low Speed Follow only when driving on motorways and in good road and weather conditions.

ACC with Low Speed Follow has limited braking capability and may not stop your vehicle in time to avoid a collision with a vehicle that quickly stops in front of you. Always be prepared to apply the brake pedal if the conditions require.

Exiting a vehicle that has been stopped while the ACC with Low Speed Follow system is operating can result in the vehicle moving without operator control. A vehicle that moves without operator control can cause a crash, resulting in serious injury or death.

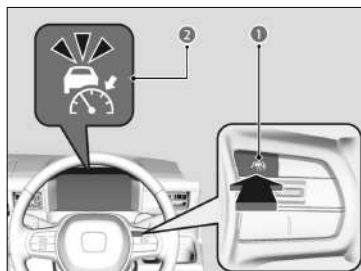
Never exit a vehicle when the vehicle is stopped by ACC with Low Speed Follow.



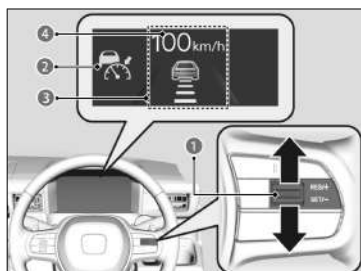
There are limits to ACC with Low Speed Follow. Use the brake pedal whenever necessary, and always keep a safe interval between your vehicle and other vehicles.

- !** Do not use ACC with Low Speed Follow under the following conditions:
- On roads with frequent lane change or continuous stop and go traffic
 - On roads with sharp turns
 - On roads with undulating slopes
 - On roads with steep uphill or steep downhill slopes
 - On roads with toll collection facilities or other objects between lanes of traffic, or in parking areas, or facilities with drive through access
 - On roads with slippery or icy surfaces

How to Activate the ACC with Low Speed Follow



- [1] Press the button (1) while the shift position is in **D**.
 » The indicator (white) (2) comes on.

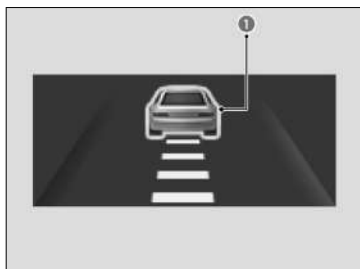


- [2] Press the **RES/+ / SET/-** switch (1) up or down.
 » The system will start operating at the set speed.
 » The icons and set speed will be displayed on the gauge.
 » If certain conditions are met, the Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) or Traffic Jam Assist will be made ready to use at the same time.

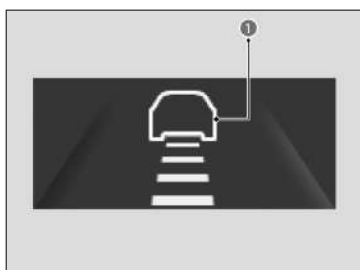
- 2** Indicator (Green, White/Green)
3 On when system operation begins
4 Set Vehicle Speed (White)

- The system does not operate while the brake pedal is depressed.
- When driving at 30 km/h (18 mph) or less, the vehicle speed is set to 30 km/h (18 mph). If your vehicle is stationary, you can set the vehicle speed even with the brake pedal depressed.

- When not using this system, press the  button to turn off the system.



If a vehicle ahead enters the detectable range, icon (1) appears, and the system adjusts your vehicle's speed within the set range in order to keep the vehicle's set following-interval.



If there is no vehicle ahead, icon (1) appears, and your vehicle maintains the set speed. If a vehicle ahead leaves due to actions such as changing lanes, the system will slowly accelerate to the set speed and then maintain it.



Your vehicle also stops automatically. The message (2) appears. When the vehicle ahead of you starts again, if you press the **RES/+SET/-** switch up or down, or depress the accelerator pedal, the system operates again within the previously set speed.

» After the vehicle ahead of you has started and moved away, your vehicle will start when you depress the accelerator pedal.

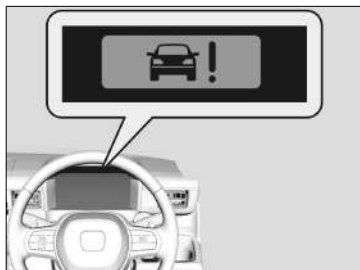
» When your vehicle stops automatically because a vehicle detected ahead of you has stopped, the interval between the two vehicles will vary based on the interval setting.

1 Indicator (Green)

 To Set the Following-interval ► P.236

- When a vehicle whose speed is slower than your set speed comes in or cuts in front of you and is detected by the system, your vehicle starts to slow down.
- Even if the interval between your vehicle and the vehicle detected ahead is short, the system may start accelerating your vehicle under the following circumstances:
 - » The vehicle ahead of you is going at almost the same speed as, or faster than, your vehicle.
 - » A vehicle that cuts in front of you is going faster than your vehicle, gradually increasing the interval between the vehicles.
- When the system slows your vehicle by applying the brakes, your vehicle's brake lights will illuminate.

- When the vehicle ahead of you moves away, such as when entering an interchange or rest area, the system may continue to maintain the set following-interval for a short time.
- The system may temporarily control the interval between your vehicle and the vehicle in adjacent lane or surroundings of your vehicle depending on the road conditions (e.g., curves) or vehicle conditions (e.g., operating the steering wheel or the vehicle location in the lane).
- While driving down steep hills, ACC with Low Speed Follow brakes to inhibit excessive acceleration for maintaining the set speed. However, the vehicle speed may become faster than the set speed.
- While the system is in operation, if the deceleration paddle selector is used, then the system will be cancelled.



If the vehicle ahead of you slows down abruptly, or if another vehicle cuts in front of you, the system provides visual and audible alerts of a possible collision.

» Depress the brake pedal, and keep an appropriate interval from the vehicle ahead.

- You can temporarily increase the vehicle speed. In this case, there is no audible or visual alert even if a vehicle is in the ACC with Low Speed Follow range. ACC with Low Speed Follow stays on unless you cancel it. Once you release the accelerator pedal, the system resumes an appropriate speed for keeping the following-interval while a vehicle ahead is within the ACC with Low Speed Follow range.



You can set the system to beep when a vehicle detected in front of you comes in and goes out of the system detection range.

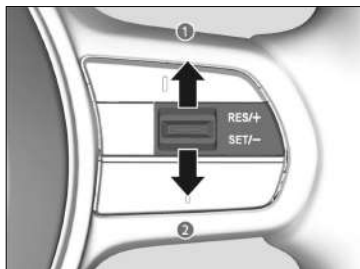
Customized Features ► P.190



You can switch the displayed set speed measurements between mph and km/h.

Customized Features ► P.190

To Adjust the Vehicle Speed



1 Pressing the RES/+/SET/- switch up

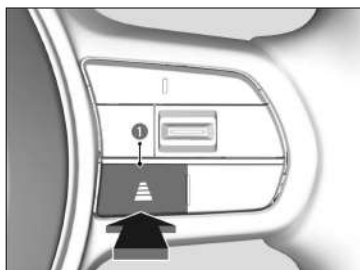
- » Each press increases speed by about 1 km/h or 1 mph.
- » Press and hold to increase speed by about 10 km/h or 10 mph.

2 Pressing the RES/+/SET/- switch down

- » Each press decreases speed by about 1 km/h or 1 mph.
- » Press and hold to decrease speed by about 10 km/h or 10 mph.

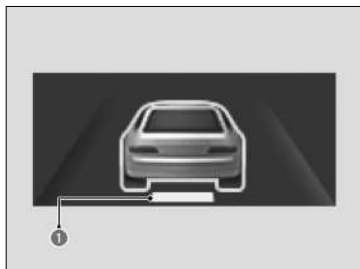
- Even if you increase the set speed, the system may suppress acceleration if the vehicle ahead is moving at a slower speed, in order to maintain the following distance.
- When you depress the accelerator pedal and then press down and release the **RES/+/SET/-** switch, the current speed of the vehicle is set.

To Set the Following-interval



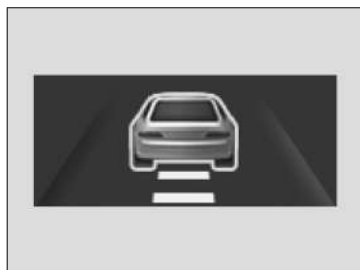
Press the  button (1) to set the following-interval.

- » Each time you press the button, the following-interval (the interval behind a vehicle detected ahead of you) setting cycles through extra long, long, middle, and short following-intervals.
- » Determine the most appropriate following-interval setting based on your specific driving conditions. Be sure to adhere to any following-interval requirements set by local regulation.
- » The higher your vehicle's following-speed is, the longer the short, middle, long, or extra long following-interval becomes.

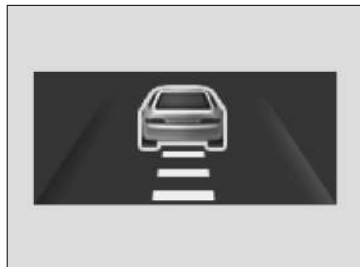


Distance between vehicles indicated by the indicator (1):

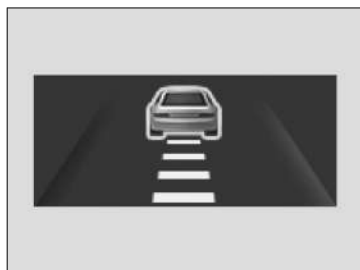
- About 27 m (87 feet), 1.2 sec^{*1}
- About 34 m (112 feet), 1.2 sec^{*2}



- About 35 m (113 feet), 1.6 sec^{*1}
- About 45 m (148 feet), 1.6 sec^{*2}



- About 44 m (144 feet), 2.0 sec^{*1}
- About 57 m (187 feet), 2.0 sec^{*2}



- About 54 m (176 feet), 2.4 sec^{*1}
- About 70 m (230 feet), 2.4 sec^{*2}

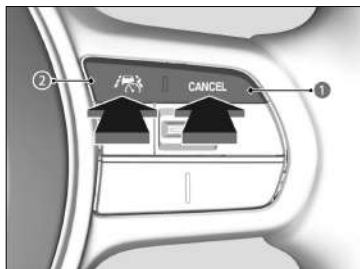
*1: When vehicle speed is 80 km/h (50 mph)

*2: When vehicle speed is 104 km/h (65 mph)



The driver must in all circumstances preserve a sufficient braking interval from the vehicle which precedes it and be aware that minimum intervals or times of spacing can be provided by the provisions of the Motorway Code locally applicable and that it is the driver's responsibility to respect those laws.

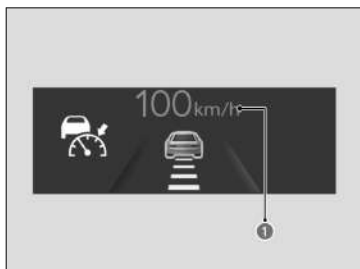
To Cancel



Any of the following operations will cause the system to be cancelled. The LKAS or Traffic Jam Assist will also be cancelled at the same time.

- Press the **CANCEL** button (1) or depress the brake pedal.
 - » The  indicator changes from green or white/green to white.
- Press the  button (2).
 - »  indicator goes off.

Resuming the prior set speed



Once the system has been cancelled by pressing the **CANCEL** button or depressing the brake pedal, the previously set speed (grey) (1) is displayed.

You can press the **RES/+ / SET/-** switch up to resume operation at the previously set speed.

System Limitations

The system may not function properly or may automatically shut off under certain conditions, including the following:

Environmental conditions

- Driving in bad weather (rain, fog, snow, etc.).
- Sudden changes between light and dark, such as the entrance or exit of a tunnel or the shadows of trees, buildings, etc.
- Strong light is reflected onto vehicles or road surfaces.
- Water is sprayed by or snow blown from a vehicle ahead.
- Driving at night or in a dark place such as a tunnel (due to low-light conditions, the whole vehicle may not be illuminated).
- Driving into low sunlight (e.g., at dawn or dusk).

Roadway conditions

- Driving on curvy, winding, undulating, or sloping roads.
- Driving on rutted roads (snowy or unpaved roads, etc.).
- Puddles or a film of water is on the road surface.
- Your vehicle is strongly shaken on uneven road surfaces.

Vehicle conditions

- The vehicle is tilted due to heavy load in the luggage area or rear seats.
- The front of the camera is obstructed by dirt, fog, rain, mud, wet snow, accessories, decals, stickers, film, etc.
- Driving at night or in a dark place (e.g., a tunnel) with the headlights off.
- There is residue on the windscreen from the windscreen wipers.
- The inside of the windscreen is fogged.
- When lighting is weak due to dirt covering the headlight lenses, or there is poor visibility in a dark place due to the headlights being improperly adjusted.
- An abnormal tyre or wheel condition (incorrect sizes, varied sizes or construction, improperly inflated, etc.).
- The suspension has been modified.
- Tyre chains are installed.

Examples of conditions under which the system may not correctly detect the vehicle ahead of you

- A vehicle suddenly crosses in front of you.
- The interval between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead of you is too short.
- When the vehicle ahead of you blends in with the background, preventing the system from recognising it.
- When the height of a vehicle ahead of you is low.
- The headlights of the vehicle ahead of you are lit on one side or not lit on either side in a dark place.

Examples of conditions under which the system may not work properly

- A vehicle ahead of you stops and the speed difference between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead of you is significantly large.
- When the vehicle ahead of you slows suddenly.
- When a vehicle ahead of you is specially-shaped.
- When a vehicle is lower in the rear than the front such as lorries that are not carrying a load, or a narrow vehicle.
- When your vehicle or the vehicle ahead of you is driving on the edge of the lane.
- When the vehicle ahead of you is a narrow vehicle such as a motorcycle.

- When the minimum ground clearance of a vehicle ahead of you is extremely high.
- When the system cannot correctly identify the shape of the vehicle ahead of you.

Automatic cancellation

The beeper sounds and a message appears when the system may be automatically cancelled due to any of the following conditions:

- Bad weather (rain, fog, snow, etc.)
- Water is sprayed by or snow blown from a vehicle ahead.
- Driving into low sunlight (e.g., at dawn or dusk).
- When passing through a dark place, such as tunnel.
- Driving on a mountainous road for extended periods, or driving off road.
- The vehicle ahead of you cannot be detected.
- Abrupt steering wheel movement.
- When the detected vehicle within the operation range is too close to your vehicle.
- When accelerating rapidly.
- The front of the camera is obstructed by dirt, fog, rain, mud, wet snow, accessories, stickers, film, etc.
- The vehicle is loaded heavy load in the luggage area or rear seats.
- An abnormal tyre condition is detected, or the tyres are skidding.
- When the parking brake and brake system indicator (amber) comes on.
- When the VSA system indicator comes on.
- When the ABS or VSA activate, or when the brakes are applied by systems such as CMBS.
- The vehicle has repeatedly applied the brakes to maintain the set speed (for example, you are descending a long slope).
- When you manually apply the parking brake.
- When the system doesn't detect any driving actions from the driver for a certain amount of time while the LKAS or Traffic Jam Assist is also activated.
- When the vehicle is stopped on a very steep slope.
- When the power mode is set to OFF.
- The driver's seat belt is unfastened when the vehicle is stationary.
- The vehicle stops for more than 10 minutes.

Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)

About Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)

When your vehicle is traveling near the centre of a lane and the system detects white (or yellow) lane markings to the left and right, it assists with steering operation to help keep the vehicle within the lane.

 Front Wide View Camera ▶ P.212

Important Safety Reminders

The LKAS is for your convenience only. It is not an autonomous driving system and always requires driver attention and control. The system does not work if you take your hands off the steering wheel or fail to steer the vehicle. It is always your responsibility to safely operate the vehicle and avoid collisions.

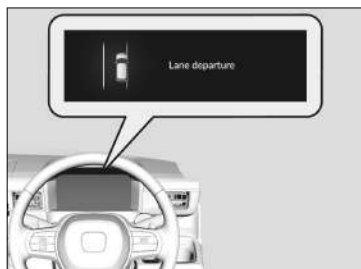
The LKAS is convenient when it is used on motorways or a dual carriage way.



If the vehicle drifts towards either left or right lane line due to the system applying torque, turn off the LKAS and have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

System Operation

Provides assistance to keep the vehicle in the centre of the lane. When the vehicle nears a white or yellow line, the steering force of the electric power steering will become stronger.



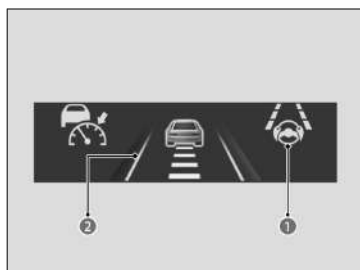
In some driving situations, when the system detects that the vehicle has departed from its lane, the LKAS alerts you with slight steering wheel vibration, and audible and visual warnings.

Operating Conditions

The system can be used when the following conditions are met:

- ACC with Low Speed Follow is operating.
- The lane in which you are driving has detectable lane markers on both sides, and your vehicle is in the centre of the lane.
- You are driving on a straight or slightly curved road.
- The turn signals are off.
- The vehicle is travelling between about 72 and 180 km/h (45 and 112 mph).

How to Activate the LKAS

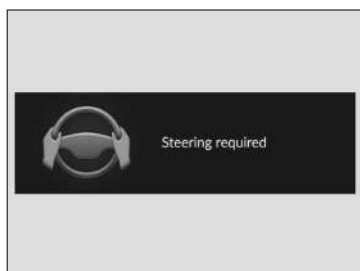


Activate ACC with Low Speed Follow.

- » The  indicator (1) and lane line (2) change from white to green once the system starts operating after detecting the left and right lane markings.

 How to Activate the ACC with Low Speed Follow ▶ P.233

- » If the LKAS does not activate even when the ACC with Low Speed Follow is activated, press the  button to turn on the LKAS.



If the driver takes their hands off the steering wheel or does not adequately maintain control of steering, the warning display will appear. If the driver does not grip the steering wheel after the warning display has repeatedly appeared, a warning buzzer will sound and system will be cancelled.

To Cancel

Press the  button or **CANCEL** button. LKAS is also cancelled if the brake pedal is depressed.

The LKAS may be automatically suspended when:

When the LKAS is suspended under the following circumstances, the  indicator changes from green to white, and the beeper sounds (if activated).

- Your vehicle is driving to the right or the left of the lane.
- The system fails to detect lane lines.
- The steering wheel is turned quickly.
- You fail to steer the vehicle.
- Driving through a sharp curve.
- When the ABS or VSA activate, or when the brakes are applied by systems such as CMBS.
- Your vehicle speed is too high.

Once these conditions no longer exist, the LKAS automatically resumes.



You can change the LKAS suspended beep on and off.

Customized Features ▶ P.190

System Limitations

The system may not operate properly under certain conditions.

Environmental conditions

- There is little contrast between lane lines and the roadway surface.
- Driving in bad weather (rain, fog, snow, etc.).
- Driving on a snowy or wet roadway.
- Driving into low sunlight (e.g., at dawn or dusk).
- Shadows of adjacent objects (trees, buildings, guard rails, vehicles, etc.) are parallel to white (or yellow) lines.
- Sudden changes between light and dark, such as the entrance or exit of a tunnel or the shadows of trees, buildings, etc.
- Driving at night or in a dark place such as a tunnel (due to low-light conditions, lane lines or the road surface may not be illuminated).
- The distance between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead of you is too short, and lane lines and the road surface are not visible.
- Strong light is reflected onto the roadway.
- Reflections on the interior of the windscreen.

Roadway conditions

- Driving on a road with temporary lane markings.
- Faint, multiple, or varied lane markings are visible on the roadway due to road repairs or deteriorated lane markings.
- The roadway has merging, split, or crossing lines, such as at an intersection or crosswalk.
- The lane markings are extremely narrow, wide, or changing.

- Part of the lane markings are hidden by an object, such as a vehicle.
- The road is hilly or the vehicle is approaching the crest of a hill.
- Your vehicle is strongly shaken on uneven road surfaces.
- When objects on the road (curb, guard rail, pylons, etc.) are recognised as white (or yellow) lines.
- Driving on rough or unpaved roads, or over bumpy surfaces.
- Driving on roads with double lane lines.
- Driving on snowy or slippery roads.
- The pavement is only partially visible due to snow or puddles on the road.
- There is a film of water or puddles on the road surface.
- White (or yellow) lines are not recognised correctly due to road conditions such as curves, twists, or hills.
- Driving on unpaved or rutted roads.
- Passing through a junction.

Vehicle conditions

- When lighting is weak due to dirt covering the headlight lenses, or there is poor visibility in a dark place due to the headlights being improperly adjusted.
- The front of the camera is obstructed by dirt, fog, rain, mud, wet snow, accessories, decals, stickers, film, etc.
- Driving at night or in a dark place (e.g., a tunnel) with the headlights off.
- There is residue on the windscreen from the windscreen wipers.
- The inside of the windscreen is fogged.
- An abnormal tyre or wheel condition (incorrect sizes, varied sizes or construction, improperly inflated, etc.).
- The vehicle is tilted due to heavy load in the luggage area or rear seats.
- The suspension has been modified.
- Tyre chains are installed.

Traffic Jam Assist

About Traffic Jam Assist

When the system detects white (or yellow) lane lines to the left and right, it assists with steering operation to help keep the vehicle centered within the lane.

 Front Wide View Camera ▶ P.212

Important Safety Reminders

Traffic Jam Assist is for your convenience only. It is not an autonomous driving system and always requires driver attention and control. The system does not work if you take your hands off the steering wheel or fail to steer the vehicle. It is always your responsibility to safely operate the vehicle and avoid collisions.

Traffic Jam Assist is convenient when it is used on motorways or a dual carriage way.



Do not use Traffic Jam Assist in any of the following situations:

- You are travelling on a road with sharp curves.
 - » The system may not allow your vehicle to respond in a manner best suited for the road conditions.
- You are entering a toll booth, interchange, service area, or parking area.
- You are driving in adverse weather (rain, fog, snow, etc.).
- The surface of the road is slippery; for example, it is icy or covered with snow.
 - » The tyres may slip, causing you to lose control of the vehicle.

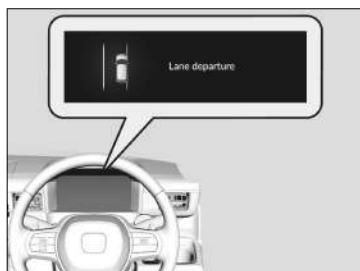


If your vehicle veers too far to the right or the left of the white (or yellow) traffic lane lines while Traffic Jam Assist is active, deactivate Traffic Jam Assist and have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

System Operation

When you are in heavy traffic and Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) is active, the traffic jam assist system, upon detecting the traffic lane lines, will apply steering torque to help keep your vehicle in the centre of the lane.

- » When the driver takes full control of the steering, the steering assist function is temporarily cancelled.
- » The torque applied to the steering may not be noticeable when the driver has full control of the steering, or when the surface of the road is rough or uneven.



In some driving situations, when the system detects that the vehicle has departed from its lane, the Traffic Jam Assist alerts you with slight steering wheel vibration, and audible and visual warnings.

Operating Conditions

- ACC with Low Speed Follow and LKAS are activated.
- The lane in which you are driving has detectable lane markers on both sides, and your vehicle is in the centre of the lane.
- You are driving on a straight or slightly curved road.
- The driver is gripping the steering wheel.
- The vehicle is travelling between about 0 and 72 km/h (0 and 45 mph).

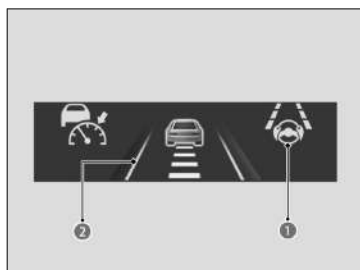
Refer to the following for proper handling of LKAS:

 About Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) ▶ P.241

Refer to the following for operating device and displays:

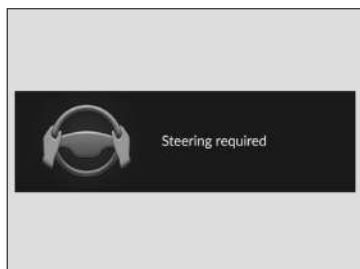
 Device for Operating Each Function and Gauge Content ▶ P.210

How to Activate the Traffic Jam Assist



Keep your vehicle near the centre of the lane while driving.

» The  indicator (1) changes from white to green, and white lines (2) change to green once the system starts operating after detecting the left and right lane markings.



If the driver takes their hands off the steering wheel or does not adequately maintain control of steering, the warning display will appear. If the driver does not grip the steering wheel after the warning display has repeatedly appeared, a warning buzzer will sound and the system will be cancelled.

To Cancel

Press the  button or **CANCEL** button. Traffic Jam Assist is also cancelled if the brake pedal is depressed.

Traffic Jam Assist may be automatically suspended when:

- Your vehicle is driving to the right or the left of the lane.
- The system fails to detect lane lines.
- The steering wheel is turned sharply.
- You fail to steer the vehicle.
- You are driving through a sharp curve.
- The ABS, VSA, CMBS, or Low Speed Braking Control is activated.

Once these conditions no longer exist, Traffic Jam Assist automatically resumes.



You can change the setting for the Traffic Jam Assist suspended beep on and off when you select the **Lane keep assist beep** on the audio/information screen.

 Customized Features ▶ P.190

System Limitations

The system may not operate properly under certain conditions.

Environmental conditions

- There is little contrast between lane lines and the roadway surface.
- Driving in bad weather (rain, fog, snow, etc.).
- Driving on a snowy or wet roadway.
- Driving into low sunlight (e.g., at dawn or dusk).
- Shadows of adjacent objects (trees, buildings, guard rails, vehicles, etc.) are parallel to white (or yellow) lines.

- Sudden changes between light and dark, such as the entrance or exit of a tunnel or the shadows of trees, buildings, etc.
- Driving at night or in a dark place such as a tunnel (due to low-light conditions, lane lines or the road surface may not be illuminated).
- When the lane lines or road surface are not visible, such as when the distance to the vehicle in front of you is extremely short or when at a junction.
- Strong light is reflected onto the roadway.

Roadway conditions

- Driving on a road with temporary lane markings.
- Faint, multiple, or varied lane markings are visible on the roadway due to road repairs or deteriorated lane markings.
- The roadway has merging, split, or crossing lines, such as at an intersection or crosswalk.
- The lane markings are extremely narrow, wide, or changing.
- Part of the lane markings are hidden by an object, such as a vehicle.
- The road is hilly or the vehicle is approaching the crest of a hill.
- Your vehicle is strongly shaken on uneven road surfaces.
- When objects on the road (curb, guard rail, pylons, etc.) are recognised as white (or yellow) lines.
- Driving on rough or unpaved roads, or over bumpy surfaces.
- Driving on roads with double lane lines.
- Driving on snowy or slippery roads.
- The pavement is only partially visible due to snow or puddles on the road.
- There is a film of water or puddles on the road surface.
- White (or yellow) lines are not recognised correctly due to road conditions such as curves, twists, or hills.
- Driving on unpaved or rutted roads.
- Passing through a junction.

Vehicle conditions

- When lighting is weak due to dirt covering the headlight lenses, or there is poor visibility in a dark place due to the headlights being improperly adjusted.
- The front of the camera is obstructed by dirt, fog, rain, mud, wet snow, accessories, decals, stickers, film, etc.
- Driving at night or in a dark place (e.g., a tunnel) with the headlights off.
- There is residue on the windscreen from the windscreen wipers.
- The inside of the windscreen is fogged.
- An abnormal tyre or wheel condition (incorrect sizes, varied sizes or construction, improperly inflated, etc.).
- The vehicle is tilted due to a heavy load in the luggage area or rear seats.

- The suspension has been modified.
- Tyre chains are installed.

Traffic Sign Recognition System

About Traffic Sign Recognition System

Reminds you of road sign information, such as the current speed limit and that overtaking is prohibited, and notifies you if your vehicle is exceeding the speed limit.

 Front Wide View Camera ▶ P.212

Important Safety Reminder

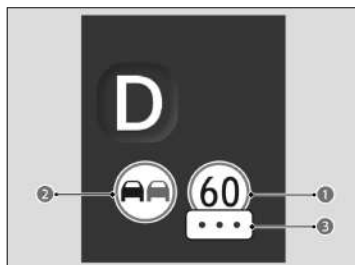
The system is designed to detect signs that follow the Vienna Convention standards. Not all signs may be displayed, but any signs posted on roadsides should not be ignored. The system does not work on the designated traffic signs of all the countries you travel, nor in all situations.

Do not rely too much on the system. It is always your responsibility to drive at speeds appropriate for the road conditions.

- Scratches, nicks, and other damage to the windscreen within the camera's field of vision can cause the system to operate abnormally. If this occurs, we recommend that you replace the windscreen with a genuine Honda replacement windscreen. Making even minor repairs within the camera's field of vision or installing an aftermarket replacement windscreen may also cause the system to operate abnormally. After replacing the windscreen, have a dealer recalibrate the camera.
Proper calibration of the camera is necessary for the system to operate properly.
- To help reduce the likelihood that high interior temperatures will cause the camera's sensing system to shut off, find a shady area or face the front of the vehicle away from the sun when parking. If you use a reflective sun shade, do not allow it to cover the camera housing. Covering the camera can concentrate heat on it.

System Operation

The system displays signs recognised as designated for your vehicle using information captured by the front of the camera from traffic signs while driving. The sign icon is usually displayed before passing the sign, and continues to be displayed until another sign is recognised.



Two traffic signs can be simultaneously displayed next to each other when detected.

The speed limit sign icon (①) is displayed on the screen. The overtaking prohibition sign icon (②) appears on the left. Any additional sign (③) that indicated speed limit based on weather (snow, etc.) or specific period of time will appear on either side.

» If the system does not detect any traffic signs while you are driving, the  (white) will appear.

The sign icon also may switch to another one, or disappear when:

- The end of speed limit or other designated limit is detected.
- Your vehicle enters/exits motorway or highway.
- You make a turn with a turn signal at an intersection.



You can turn the traffic sign recognition system on and off.

 Customized Features ▶ P.190



The unit for speed limits (mph or km/h) varies from country to country. Just after entering a country whose unit differs to the one of the country from which you came, the Traffic Sign Recognition System may not work correctly. You can switch the displayed set speed measurements between mph and km/h.

 Customized Features ▶ P.190



 (amber) appears on the gauge in the following cases. If this icon does not disappear, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

- There is a problem with the system.
- Immediately after turning on the power system.

System Limitations

The system's ability to accurately notify the driver of the speed limit is dependent on certain conditions such as the units displayed on the traffic sign as well as the speed and direction of travel of the vehicle. In some cases, the system may display false warnings or other inaccurate information.

The system may display false warnings or other inaccurate information, be slow to identify the traffic sign, or fail to recognise it in the following cases.

Environmental conditions

- Driving into low sunlight (e.g., at dawn or dusk).
- Strong light is reflected onto the roadway.
- Driving at night, or in dark areas such as long tunnels.
- Driving in bad weather (rain, fog, snow, etc.).
- Sudden changes between light and dark, such as the entrance or exit of a tunnel or the shadows of trees, buildings, etc.
- Water is sprayed by or snow blown from a vehicle ahead.
- Reflections on the interior of the windscreen.

Roadway conditions

- Your vehicle is strongly shaken on uneven road surfaces.

Vehicle conditions

- Driving at night or in a dark place (e.g., a tunnel) with the headlights off.
- When lighting is weak due to dirt covering the headlight lenses, or there is poor visibility in a dark place due to the headlights being improperly adjusted.
- The front of the camera is obstructed by dirt, fog, rain, mud, wet snow, accessories, decals, stickers, film, etc.
- There is residue on the windscreen from the windscreen wipers.
- The inside of the windscreen is fogged.
- An abnormal tyre or wheel condition (incorrect sizes, varied sizes or construction, improperly inflated, etc.).
- The vehicle is tilted due to heavy load in the luggage area or rear seats.
- The suspension has been modified.
- Tyre chains are installed.

The position or the condition of the traffic sign

- The sign is in a place that makes it hard to find.
- The sign is located far away from your vehicle.
- The sign is located where it is hard for headlight beams to reach.
- The sign is on a corner or bend in the road.
- The sign is faded or bent.
- The sign is rotated or damaged.
- The sign is covered with mud, snow, or frost.
- Part of the sign is hidden by the trees, or is in the shadow of a vehicle or other object.
- Light (such as a streetlight) is reflected on the surface of the sign, or it is hidden in shadow.
- The sign is too bright or too dark (electric signs).

- Small signs (auxiliary signs, etc.).

Other conditions

- When you are driving at a high speed.

The Traffic Sign Recognition System may not operate correctly, such as displaying signs that do not adhere to the actual regulations for the roadway or do not exist at all in the following cases:

» A speed limit sign may display at a higher or lower speed than the actual speed limit.

- There is a supplementary sign with further information such as weather, time, vehicle type, etc.
- Figures on the sign are hard to read (electric sign, numbers on the signs are blurred, etc.).
- The sign is in the vicinity of the lane you are driving in, even though it is not for the lane, such as a speed limit sign situated at a junction between the side road and the main road.
- There are things that look similar in colour or shape to recognised objects (similar sign, electric sign, signboard, structure, etc.).

Parking Sensor System

About Parking Sensor System

The sensors monitor obstacles around your vehicle, and the beeper and display let you know the approximate distance between your vehicle and the obstacle.

 Sonar Sensors ▶P.213



Even when the system is on, always confirm if there is no obstacle near your vehicle before parking.

System On and Off

You can turn the system on and off using the driver information interface.

 Switching the Display ▶P.271

 Safety Support ▶P.277

- When you turn off the system, it will remain off until you turn it back on.

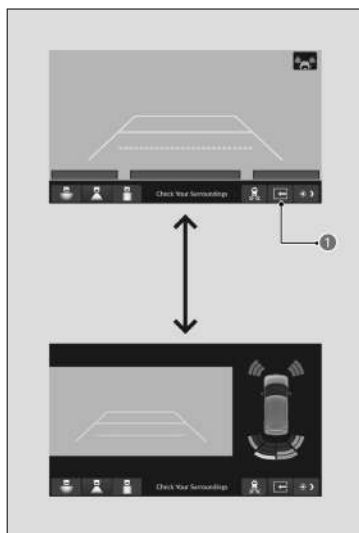


You can turn the rear parking sensor system on and off. If only the rear parking sensors are turned off, the Low Speed Braking Control System will not work when reversing.

 Customized Features ▶P.190

 About Low Speed Braking Control ▶P.223

Screen Operation



You can switch between split view off and split view on by touching the icon (1).

Operations When an Obstacle Has Been Detected

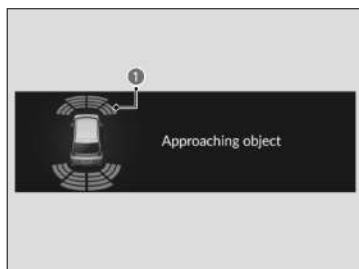
The front corner sensors and rear sensors operate if the shift position is in **R** and the vehicle speed is less than 9 km/h (6 mph).

The front sensors operate if the shift position is not in **P** or **R** and the vehicle speed is less than 9 km/h (6 mph).

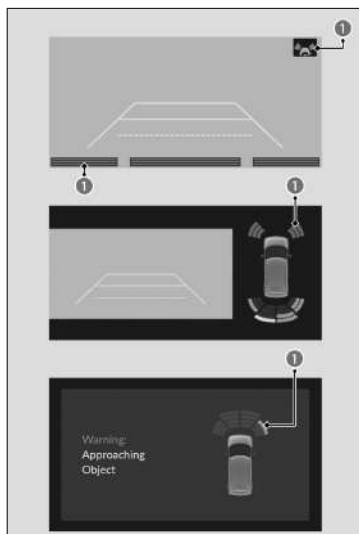


The parking sensor indicator blinks.

» If the system is turned off, only the parking sensor indicator will blink when an obstacle is detected.

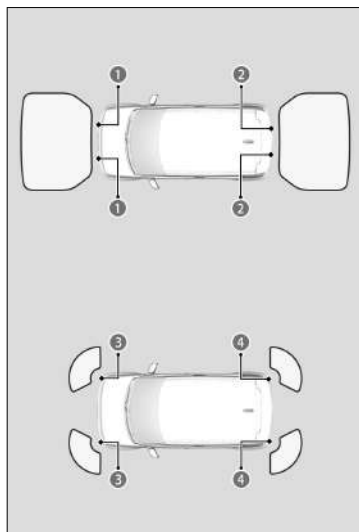


The indicators (1) show the location of the detected location on the driver information interface.



The indicators (1) also show the position of the detected location on the audio/information screen.

Distance between the vehicle and obstacles indicated by indicator colours



1 Front Centre Sensors

- Yellow: About 75-60 cm (30-24 inches)*¹
- Amber: About 60-40 cm (24-16 inches)
- Red: About 40 cm (16 inches) or less

2 Rear Centre Sensors

- Yellow: About 115-65 cm (45-26 inches)*¹
- Amber: About 65-40 cm (26-16 inches)
- Red: About 40 cm (16 inches) or less

3 Front Corner Sensors

- Amber: About 60-35 cm (24-14 inches)
- Red: About 35 cm (14 inches) or less

4 Rear Corner Sensors

- Amber: About 55-35 cm (22-14 inches)
- Red: About 35 cm (14 inches) or less

As the indicator colour changes from yellow to orange to red, the warning intervals of the beep become shorter.

*1: When the indicator is yellow, only the centre sensors detect obstacles.

To temporarily turn off the beeper, press the selector wheel while it is sounding. Temporary OFF will be cancelled when the shift position changes from **P**/**R** to **N**/**D** or vice-versa, or the vehicle speed reaches 14 km/h (9 mph) or higher.

System Limitations

The system may not work properly when:

- The sensors are covered with snow, ice, mud, or dirt.
- The vehicle has been out in hot or cold weather.
- There is something nearby that emits ultrasonic waves or high frequency sounds.
- Driving in bad weather (rain, fog, snow, etc.).

The system may not detect these obstacles:

- Thin or low objects.
- Sonic-absorptive materials, such as snow, cotton, or sponge.

- Objects directly under the bumper.

The system may falsely detect obstacles in the following situations:

- The vehicle is on uneven surface, such as grass, bumps, or a hill.
- When close to other vehicles with sonar sensors or other objects that emit ultrasonic waves.
- There is splashing water near the sensors due to heavy rains, etc.



Do not put any accessories on or around the sensors.

If you put any accessories (such as a bicycle rack) on or around the rear sensors, the system may activate if it detects these accessories as an obstacle. In this case, turn off the rear sensor.

 **Customized Features** ▶ **P.190**

About Your Instrument Panel

Indicators

Indicator List..... 260

When Indicators Come On/Blink..... 261

Gauges

Types of Gauges..... 268

Driver Information Interface

About the Driver Information Interface..... 271

About the Display.....271

Indicators

Indicator List

 Parking Brake and Brake System Indicator (Red) Q, P.262	 Parking Brake and Brake System Indicator (Amber) Q, P.262	 12-Volt Battery Charging System Indicator Q, P.263	 Seat Belt Reminder Indicator Q, P.263	 Supplemental Restraint System Indicator Q, P.263
 Power System Indicator Q, P.263	 Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) Indicator Q, P.263	 Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System Indicator Q, P.264	 Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) OFF Indicator Q, P.264	 Electric Power Steering (EPS) System Indicator Q, P.264
 Parking Sensor Indicator Q, P.264	 Low Tyre Pressure/TPMS Indicator Q, P.264	 Rear Fog Light Indicator Q, P.120	 System Message Indicator Q, P.280	 Transmission System Indicator Q, P.265
 Shift Position Indicator Q, P.91	 Deceleration Paddle Selector Indicator Q, P.132	 Simulated Gear Level Indicator Q, P.131	 ECON Mode Indicator Q, P.130	 CITY Mode Indicator Q, P.130
NORMAL Mode Indicator Q, P.130	SPORT Mode Indicator Q, P.131	BOOST Mode Indicator Q, P.131	 Automatic Brake Hold System Indicator Q, P.99	 Automatic Brake Hold Indicator Q, P.99

 READY READY Indicator Q P.89	 Single Pedal Indicator (Green/Grey) Q P.134	 Turn Signal Indicators Q P.118	 Hazard Warning Indicators	 Lights On Indicator Q P.118
 *1 Auto high-beam Indicator Q P.122	 High Beam Indicator Q P.119	 *1 Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow Indicator (Amber) Q P.265	 *1 Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow Indicator (White/Green) Q P.211	 *1 Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) Indicator (Amber) Q P.265
 Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) Indicator (White/Green) Q P.211	 *1 Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS) Indicator (Amber) Q P.265	 *1 Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS) Indicator (Grey) Q P.277	 *1 Road Departure Mitigation Indicator (Amber) Q P.266	 *1 Road Departure Mitigation Indicator (Grey) Q P.277
 Road Departure Mitigation System Steering Assist Auto OFF Indicator Q P.266	 *1 Safety Support Indicator (Amber) Q P.266	 *1 Safety Support Indicator (Green/Grey) Q P.277	 Immobilizer System Indicator Q P.54	 Security System Alarm Indicator Q P.55

*1: When you set the power mode to ON, these indicators come on to indicate that system checks are being performed. They go off a few seconds later or after the power system has started. If an indicator does not come on or turn off, there may be a malfunction in the corresponding system. To resolve the issue, follow the instructions in the owner's manual.

When Indicators Come On/Blink

Indicators come on/blink depending on the condition of the vehicle. Messages may be displayed at the same time. Please take the appropriate action outlined in the message, such as having your vehicle checked by a dealer.

If a message is displayed saying the vehicle cannot be driven, immediately stop in a safe place and contact a dealer.



Parking Brake and Brake System Indicator (Red)

Comes on when the parking brake is applied, and goes off when it is released.

Comes on when the brake fluid level is low.

- › Depress the brake pedal lightly to check pedal pressure.
- › If normal, check the brake fluid level the next time you stop.

Q Checking the Brake Fluid ► P.290

- › If abnormal, take immediate action. Pull the  paddle as many times as needed to help slow the vehicle using regenerative braking. Or, if the drive mode is in **SPORT** or **BOOST** mode, pull back on the  paddle to decrease the gear level.
- Have your vehicle repaired immediately. It is dangerous to drive with low brake fluid. If there is no resistance from the brake pedal, stop immediately in a safe place. If necessary, pull the  paddle as many times as needed to help slow the vehicle using regenerative braking. Or, if the drive mode is in **SPORT** or **BOOST** mode, pull back on the  paddle to decrease the gear level.

Comes on if there is a problem with the brake system.

- If the Parking Brake and Brake System Indicator (Red) and Parking Brake and Brake System Indicator (Amber) come on simultaneously, the braking system may be less effective than usual. Make sure to depress the brake pedal firmly. Immediately stop in a safe place and contact a dealer.
- If the Parking Brake and Brake System Indicator (Red) and **ABS** indicator come on simultaneously, the electronic brake distribution system is not working. This can result in vehicle instability under sudden braking. Have your vehicle inspected by a dealer immediately.

Blinks if there is a problem with the electric parking brake.

- › Do not use the parking brake.
- › Put the transmission into  to prevent the vehicle from moving, as the parking brake may not work.
- If the Parking Brake and Brake System Indicator (Red) blinks at the same time when the Parking Brake and Brake System Indicator (Amber) comes on, the parking brake may not work. Avoid using the parking brake and have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately.



Parking Brake and Brake System Indicator (Amber)

Comes on if there is a problem with a system related to braking other than the conventional brake system.

Comes on if there is a problem with the electric parking brake system and/or the automatic brake hold system.

- › Do not use the parking brake.



12-Volt Battery Charging System Indicator

Comes on when there is a problem with the charging system.



Seat Belt Reminder Indicator

Comes on or blinks when any seat belts are unfastened.

» Securely fasten seat belts immediately.

[Seat Belt Reminder](#) ▶P.74

- Comes on or blinks for a while if any rear passenger unfastens their seat belt. Turns off momentarily.
- If this indicator stays on after you and/or the passengers have fastened the seat belt(s), a detection error may have occurred in the sensor. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.
- You can check whether each seat belt is fastened on the driver information interface.

[Switching the Display](#) ▶P.271



Supplemental Restraint System Indicator

Comes on if a problem with the airbag system or seat belt tensioners is detected.

[About Your Airbags](#) ▶P.43



Power System Indicator

Comes on if there is a problem with the electric vehicle system or plug-in charging system.



Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) Indicator

Comes on if there is a problem with the ABS.

- With this indicator on, your vehicle still has normal braking ability but no ABS function. This can result in vehicle instability under sudden braking, so avoid situations such as motorway driving.



Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System Indicator

Blinks when VSA is active.

Comes on if there is a problem with the VSA system, hill start assist system, or agile handling assist.

- With this indicator on, your vehicle still has normal braking ability.



Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) OFF Indicator

Comes on when you partially disable VSA.

 Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System ►P.136



Electric Power Steering (EPS) System Indicator

Comes on if there is a problem with the EPS system.

» Stop your vehicle in a safe place. If this indicator stays on after restarting the power system, take your vehicle to a dealer for an inspection immediately.



Parking Sensor Indicator

Blinks if there are obstacles around the sensors.

 About Parking Sensor System ►P.254



Low Tyre Pressure/TPMS Indicator

Comes on if the tyre pressure of any of the tyres becomes low.

» Stop in a safe place, check tyre pressures, and inflate the tyre(s) if necessary.

If this indicator stays on after blinking, there is a problem with the TPMS.

 Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) ► P.139



Transmission System Indicator

Blinks if the transmission system has a problem.

Blinks if you cannot select **P** due to a transmission system failure.

» Set the parking brake when parking.

- Depending on the situation, you may not be able to turn on the power system.



Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow Indicator (Amber)

Comes on if there is a problem with ACC with Low Speed Follow.

- Comes on if the vehicle is tilted due to heavy load in the luggage area or rear seats.



Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) Indicator (Amber)

Comes on if there is a problem with the LKAS.

» LKAS and Traffic Jam Assist cannot be used.

- Comes on if the vehicle is tilted due to heavy load in the luggage area or rear seats.



Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS) Indicator (Amber)

Comes on if there is a problem with the CMBS or it cannot be used temporarily due to issues such as dirt on the windscreen near the camera.

- The Safety Support Indicator (Amber) will come on at the same time.

 Safety Support Indicator (Amber) ► P.266



Road Departure Mitigation Indicator (Amber)

Comes on if there is a problem with the Road Departure Mitigation System or it cannot be used temporarily due to issues such as dirt on the windscreen near the camera.

- The Safety Support Indicator (Amber) will come on at the same time.

 [Safety Support Indicator \(Amber\)](#) ▶ P.266



Road Departure Mitigation System Steering Assist Auto OFF Indicator

Comes on when the Road Departure Mitigation System steering assist is automatically turned off.

 [About Road Departure Mitigation System](#) ▶ P.227



Safety Support Indicator (Amber)

Comes on if there is a problem with any of the safety support systems.

 [Safety Support](#) ▶ P.277

- Comes on if the vehicle is tilted due to heavy load in the luggage area or rear seats.

Comes on if there is a problem with the parking sensor.

» Check if the area around the sensor(s) is covered with mud, ice, snow, etc.

 [About Parking Sensor System](#) ▶ P.254

Comes on when driver assist system functions are limited because the camera's temperature is too high.

 [Front Wide View Camera](#) ▶ P.212

Comes on when driver assist system functions are limited because of poor camera visibility due to poor weather, such as rain, fog, snow, or dark surroundings, such as in early morning, late evening, or the inside of a tunnel at night.

- Comes on when the area around the camera is covered by obstacles.

 [Front Wide View Camera](#) ▶ P.212

Comes on when the Low Speed Braking Control System's functions are limited because the sonar sensor is covered by obstacles.

 [Sonar Sensors](#) ▶ P.213

Q About Low Speed Braking Control ►P.223

Gauges

Types of Gauges



- ① Traffic Sign Recognition System
- ② Current Mode for Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow, the Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS), and Traffic Jam Assist
- ③ Speedometer
- ④ Range
- ⑤ High Voltage Battery Charge Level Gauge
- ⑥ Odometer
- ⑦ Clock
- ⑧ Outside Temperature

Speedometer

Displays your driving speed.

- You can change the Speed/Distance units.

Customized Features P.190

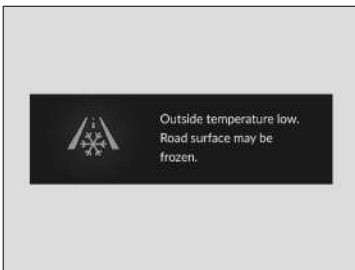
High Voltage Battery Charge Level Gauge

Shows the remaining High Voltage battery charge level.

- The High Voltage battery charge level may decrease under the following conditions:
 - » When the 12-volt battery has been replaced.
 - » When the 12-volt battery has been disconnected.
 - » When the High Voltage battery control system corrects its reading.
- Changes in the temperature of the High Voltage battery can cause the value displayed by the battery charge level gauge to change.

Outside Temperature

Shows the outside temperature.



When the power mode is turned to ON while the outside temperature is 3°C or less, the **Outside temperature low** message displays in white. If the outside temperature drops to 3°C or less while driving, the message displays in amber.

- The temperature sensor is in the front bumper.
- Your vehicle, surrounding vehicles, and road heat can affect the temperature reading when your vehicle speed is less than 30 km/h (19 mph). Also, the display is not updated until the temperature reading has stabilised. This may take several minutes.



You can adjust the temperature displayed on the gauge.

 Customized Features ► P.190

Traffic Sign Recognition System

Shows certain detected traffic signs while driving.

If speed limit warning is activated, the sign icon blinks when the maximum speed of the detected traffic sign is exceeded.

 About Traffic Sign Recognition System ► P.250

Current Mode for Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow, the Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS), and Traffic Jam Assist

Shows the current mode for ACC with Low Speed Follow, LKAS, and Traffic Jam Assist.

 About Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow ► P.232

 About Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) ▶P.241

 About Traffic Jam Assist ▶P.245

Odometer

Shows the total distance that your vehicle has travelled.

The odometer will not be displayed when the driver information interface is in **Simple** mode.

 Switching the Display ▶P.271

Range

Shows the estimated distance you can travel based on the remaining power and average energy consumption.

- The driving range displayed is only an estimate and may differ from the actual distance the vehicle can travel.

Clock

Shows the clock.

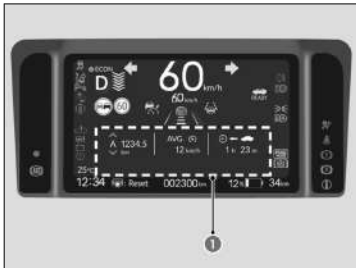
Clock setup

Manual time adjustment is not necessary because the clock is using satellite information.

For details on other settings, please refer to the Navigation or Audio instruction manuals for your vehicle.

Driver Information Interface

About the Driver Information Interface



1 Driver Information Interface

The driver information interface shows your vehicle's condition and alerts you with a warning message when an abnormality is detected.

When a warning message is displayed, please check the message and contact a dealer to have the vehicle inspected if necessary.

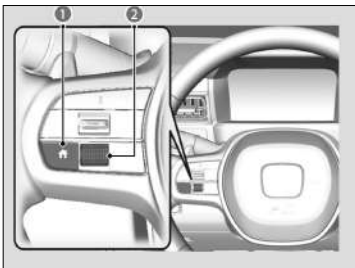
Please refer to the pages below if the **Reduced stopping power** or **High voltage battery thermal problem** message is displayed.

Q If the Reduced stopping power Warning Appears ► P.332

Q If the High voltage battery thermal problem Warning Appears ► P.333

About the Display

Switching the Display



1 (home) Button

2 Left Selector Wheel

Press the  (home) button, then roll the left selector wheel to scroll to the content you want to see. Press the left selector wheel to see detailed information.

- Selecting **Triple meter** will display High Voltage Battery Temperature Gauge, POWER/CHARGE Gauge, and Tachometer or Instant Energy Consumption.
- You can add or delete the meter contents.

Q Display Settings ► P.279

Simple

By selecting the simple mode, you can set the meter to display the minimum information necessary.

High Voltage Battery Temperature Gauge (BATT TEMP)

Displays the temperature of the High Voltage battery.

- Depending on the outside temperature, driving conditions, charging status, etc., the temperature of the High Voltage battery will change.

 High Voltage System and Battery ▶P.13

 About Charging ▶P.110

POWER/CHARGE Gauge

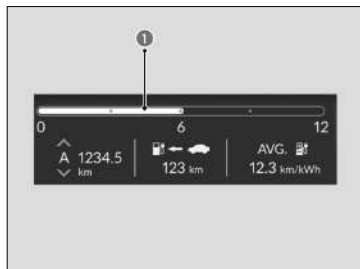
Display the status of electric motor output and High Voltage battery charging.

Tachometer (RPM)

Shows the number of virtual motor revolutions per minute.

When **ECON**, **CITY**, or **NORMAL** mode is turned on, the tachometer switches to showing instant energy consumption.

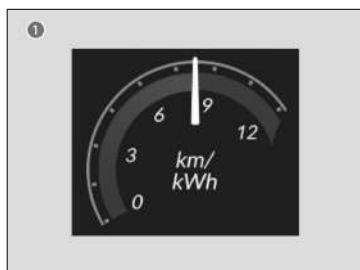
Instant Energy Consumption



Shows the instant energy consumption as a bar graph.

When **SPORT** or **BOOST** mode is turned on, the display switches from round-type instant energy consumption to the tachometer.

① Instant Energy Consumption (Bar type)

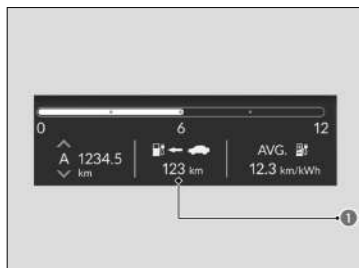


① Instant Energy Consumption (Round type)

Power Flow

Displays the motor output and whether the High Voltage battery is being charged.

Range



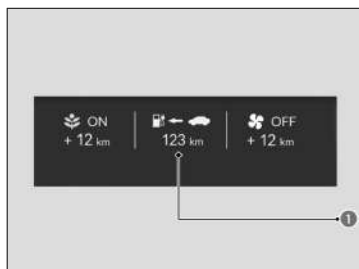
Shows the estimated distance you can travel on the remaining power. This estimate is based on the energy consumption of your previous trips and the remaining charge of the High Voltage battery.

Displays the expected increase in range when **ECON** mode is turned on or the climate control system is turned off.

ECON Mode ▶ P.130

Automatic Climate Control System ▶ P.149

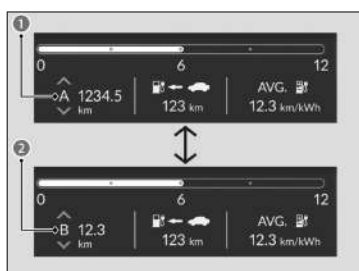
1 Range



1 Range

- The driving range displayed is only an estimate and may differ from the actual distance the vehicle can travel.

Trip Meter



Shows the total distance driven since the last reset.

Roll the left selector wheel to switch between trip meter A and trip meter B.

Meters A and B can be used to measure two separate trips.

1 Trip Meter A

2 Trip Meter B

- To reset the trip meter, display it, then press the left selector wheel, and then select **Reset**. The trip meter is reset to 0.0. Additionally, average energy consumption, average speed, and elapsed time will also be reset.

- When the trip meter exceeds 9999.9 kilometres or miles, it resets to 0.0.



The trip meter can reset automatically after recharging or when the power mode is set to OFF.

Customized Features ►P.190

- When the trip meter's reset timing is set to **When Charged**, if the battery warming system is operating due to low outside temperatures, then the trip meter may not be able to automatically reset.

Battery warming system ►P.16

Average Energy Consumption



Shows the average energy consumption for trip meters A and B in set intervals.

1 Average Fuel Economy

- The average energy consumption displayed may differ from the amount consumed while actually driving.
- If it was reset while parked or driving at a low speed, calculation of energy consumption will start after you resume normal driving.

Average Speed



Shows the average speed since Trip A or Trip B was reset.

1 Average Speed

Elapsed Time



Shows the time elapsed since Trip A or Trip B was reset.

1 Elapsed Time

Audio

Shows the current audio information.

Phone

Shows the current phone information.

Navigation

The compass screen and turn-by-turn directions appear based on the driving guidance provided by Apple CarPlay or Android Auto.

Apple CarPlay ► P.181

Android Auto™ ► P.183

- Navigation features may not be available for all devices or apps.

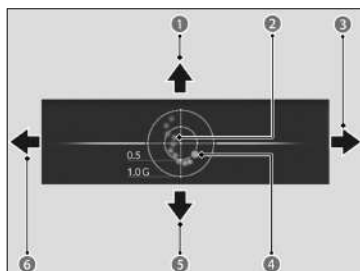


You can select whether to have the turn-by-turn display come on or not during the route guidance.

Customized Features ► P.190

G-Meter

Displays the strength (G) and direction of the load that is applied to the vehicle during driving.



- ❶ When decelerated while moving forward/
When accelerated while reversing
- ❷ Lateral forces of the past three seconds
(white)
- ❸ When steering to the left
- ❹ Real-time lateral force (red)
- ❺ When accelerated while moving forward/
When decelerated while reversing
- ❻ When steering to the right

Seat Belts

Occurs, under specified conditions, when seat belts are latched or unlatched.

🔍 Seat Belt Reminder ▶P.74

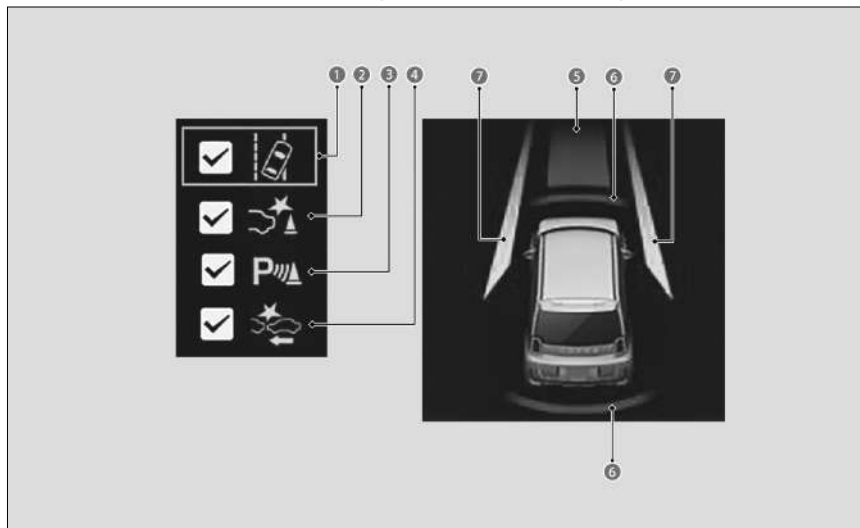
Tyre Pressure Monitor

Shows each tyre's pressure.

🔍 Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) ▶P.139

Safety Support

Safety Support indicates the operating status of the following systems.



- ❶ Road Departure Mitigation System

- 2 Low Speed Braking Control
- 3 Parking Sensor Warning
- 4 CMBS
- 5 Operating Status for CMBS
- 6 Operating Status for Parking Sensor Warning/Operating Status for Low Speed Braking Control
- 7 Operating Status for Road Departure Mitigation System

The following colours indicate the status of any of the above-mentioned systems:

- Green: The system is on.
- Grey: The system is off.
- Amber: There is a problem with the system.
- To turn each system on or off, first rotate the left selector wheel to switch displays. From the next display, you can select which system to turn on or off.

 About Road Departure Mitigation System ▶ P.227

 About Low Speed Braking Control ▶ P.223

 About Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS) ▶ P.216

 About Parking Sensor System ▶ P.254

- When all features are ON, the  safety support indicator lights up in green. It lights up in green/grey when one or some of the features are ON, and it lights up in grey when all features are OFF.
- When CMBS is OFF, the  Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS) indicator (grey) also lights up. When the Road Departure Mitigation system is OFF, the  Road Departure Mitigation indicator (grey) also lights up.
- See below if the indicator lights up in amber.

 Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS) Indicator (Amber) ▶ P.265

 Road Departure Mitigation Indicator (Amber) ▶ P.266

 Road Departure Mitigation System Steering Assist Auto OFF Indicator ▶ P.266

 Safety Support Indicator (Amber) ▶ P.266

- Even when the Low Speed Braking Control icon is green, if the **Rear Sensor Setting** is turned off, the brake assist will not operate when reversing.

 Customized Features ▶ P.190

- Even when the parking sensor warning icon is green, if the **Rear Sensor Setting** is turned off, the rear parking sensor will not operate when reversing.

 Customized Features ▶ P.190

Calendar

Shows the date and clock.

 Clock ▶ P.270

- The calendar background is selected randomly.

■ Adjusting the date

Manual date adjustment is not necessary because the clock is using satellite information.

■ Calendar setup

You can change the calendar background, birthday setting, and anniversary setting. When the transmission is in **P**, roll the left selector wheel to select the setting you want to change.

- The system will display a message when the power mode is set to ON on a selected date.

Brightness Setting

Displays the adjustment for instrument panel brightness.

When the power mode is in ON, you can use the left selector wheel to adjust instrument panel brightness.

- **Brighten:** Roll the left selector wheel up.
- **Dim:** Roll the left selector wheel down.

Press the left selector wheel to exit.

- The brightness of the gauge is automatically adjusted depending on the ambient brightness.
 - » The brightness decreases when the ambient light is dark.
 - » The brightness increases when the ambient light is bright.
- You can change the setting even when the ambient lighting is bright, but the brightness of the gauge won't change.

VSA Mode

You can turn the VSA on or off.

Roll the left selector wheel to scroll to select **Reduce traction control**, then press the left selector wheel to check or uncheck it.

 Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System ▶P.136

Display Settings

You can choose which icons to display on the home screen.

- [1] Roll the left selector wheel until **Display Settings** is selected, then press the left selector wheel.
- [2] Roll the left selector wheel.

[3] Roll the left selector wheel to scroll between icons, then press the left selector wheel to check or uncheck them.

- Contents that are grey cannot be removed.
- When you customize settings, shift to **P**.

Information

You can check if there are any active warning messages.

- If there are multiple messages, you can roll the left selector wheel to see other messages.
- When there is a warning message, the  system message indicator lights up.

Tyre Angle Monitor

In the following situations, when the vehicle speed is about 15 km/h (9 mph) or less, the direction of the tyres is displayed in 7 stages based on the angle of the tyres and how much the steering wheel is rotated:

- The steering wheel is turned over 90 degrees to the left or right and the power mode is set to ON.
- The steering wheel is turned over 90 degrees to the left or right and the shift position is changed to **D**.
- The shift position is in **R**.



You can turn the Tyre Angle Monitor display on and off.

 Customized Features ► P.190

Before Performing Maintenance

Inspection and Maintenance	282
Maintenance Safety	283
Vehicle Safety	283

Maintenance Under the Bonnet

Maintenance Items Under the Bonnet	284
Opening the Bonnet	284
Cooling System	286
Transmission Fluid	286
High Voltage System Coolant	288
Climate Control Coolant	288
Brake Fluid	290
Refilling Window Washer Fluid	290

Checking and Maintaining Wiper Blades

Changing the Front Wiper Blade Rubber	292
Changing the Rear Wiper Blade Rubber	293

Checking and Maintaining Tyres

Checking Tyres	295
Wear Indicators	296
Tyre Service Life	296
Tyre and Wheel Replacement	297
Snow Traction Devices	297
Tyre Rotation	299

12-Volt Battery

Maintaining 12-Volt Battery	300
Checking the 12-Volt Battery	301
Charging the 12-Volt Battery	302
Replacing the 12-Volt Battery	302
12-Volt Battery Label	304

Climate Control System Maintenance

Air Conditioning	305
How to Replace the Dust and Pollen Filter	305

Cleaning

Interior Care	307
Exterior Care	309

Before Performing Maintenance

Inspection and Maintenance

For your safety, perform all listed inspections and maintenance to keep your vehicle in good condition.

If you become aware of any abnormality (noise, smell, insufficient brake fluid, oil residue on the ground, etc.), have your vehicle inspected by a dealer.

Refer to the service information for your vehicle (if available) for detailed maintenance and inspection information.

Periodic inspections

- Check the brake fluid level monthly.

 Brake Fluid ▶P.290

- Check the tyre pressure monthly. Examine the tread for wear and foreign objects.

 Checking Tyres ▶P.295

- Check the operation of the exterior lights monthly.

 About the Vehicle's LED Exterior Lighting ▶P.313

- Check the condition of the wiper blades at least every six months.

 Changing the Front Wiper Blade Rubber ▶P.292

Routine inspections

Perform inspections before long distance trips or when washing the vehicle.

WARNING

Improperly maintaining this vehicle or failing to correct a problem before driving can cause a crash in which you or a passenger can be seriously hurt or killed.

Always follow the inspection and maintenance recommendations and schedules in this owner's manual/Service Book.

WARNING

Failure to properly follow maintenance instructions and precautions can cause you or a passenger to be seriously hurt or killed.

Always follow the procedures and precautions in this owner's manual.

Maintenance Safety

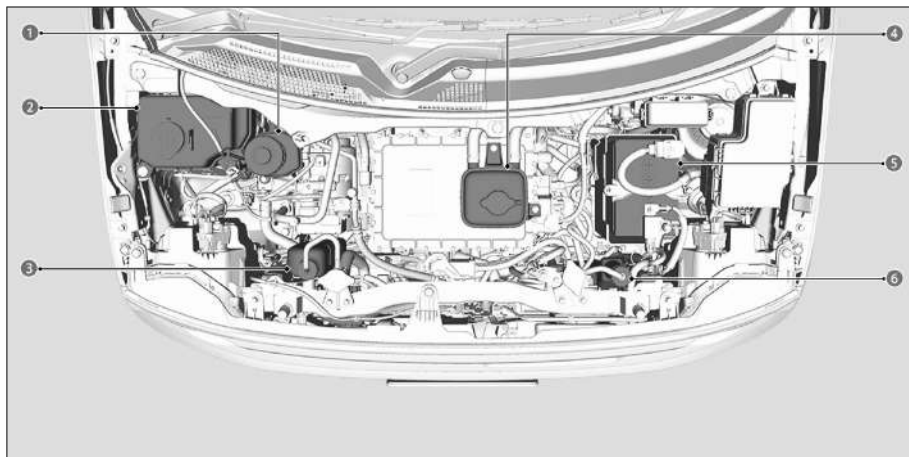
- To reduce the possibility of fire or explosion, keep cigarettes, sparks, and flames away from the 12-volt battery.
- Never leave rags, towels, or other flammable objects under the bonnet.
 - » Heat from the surrounding parts can ignite them, causing a fire.
- To clean parts, use a commercially available degreaser or parts cleaner, not petrol.
- Wear eye protection and protective clothing when working with the 12-volt battery or compressed air.

Vehicle Safety

- The vehicle must be stationary.
 - » Make sure your vehicle is parked on level ground, the parking brake is set, and the power system is turned off.
- Do not touch the high voltage battery and wiring (orange).
- Make sure that the radiator fan is stopped before inspecting the motor room compartment.
 - » Depending on the vehicle condition, the radiator fan may operate even when the power mode is in VEHICLE OFF.
- Be aware that hot parts can burn you.
 - » Make sure to let the power system cool thoroughly before touching vehicle parts.
- Be aware that moving parts can injure you.
 - » Do not set the power mode to ON unless instructed, and keep your hands and limbs away from moving parts.
- The use of Honda Genuine Parts and fluids is recommended when maintaining and servicing your vehicle. Honda Genuine Parts are manufactured according to the same high quality standards used in Honda vehicles.

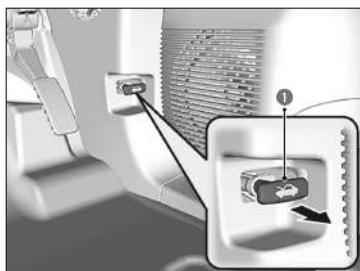
Maintenance Under the Bonnet

Maintenance Items Under the Bonnet



- ① Brake Fluid (Black Cap)
- ② Washer Fluid (Blue Cap)
- ③ High Voltage System Coolant Tank A
- ④ Climate Control Coolant Reserve Tank
- ⑤ 12-Volt Battery
- ⑥ High Voltage System Coolant Tank B

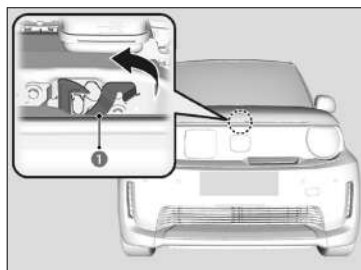
Opening the Bonnet



- [1] Pull the bonnet release handle under the driver's side lower outside corner of the dashboard.

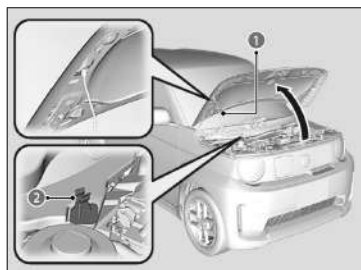
» The bonnet will pop up slightly.

- ① Bonnet Release Handle



- [2] Push the bonnet latch lever (located under the front edge of the bonnet to the centre) to the side and raise the bonnet. Once you have raised the bonnet slightly, you can release the lever.

1 Lever



- [3] Remove the support rod from the clamp. Mount the support rod in the bonnet.

1 Support Rod

2 Clamp

- Park the vehicle on a level surface, and set the parking brake.
- When closing the bonnet, check that the bonnet is securely latched.
- If the bonnet latch lever moves stiffly, or if you can open the bonnet without lifting the lever, the latch mechanism should be cleaned and lubricated.



Do not open the bonnet when the wiper arms are raised. The bonnet will strike the wipers, resulting in possible damage to the bonnet and/or the wipers.

Cooling System

Climate Control Coolant Reserve Tank Cap



- Never open when hot.
- Hot coolant will scald you.
- Relief pressure valve begins to open at 49kPa.

High Voltage System Coolant Tank Cap A, High Voltage System Coolant Tank Cap B



- Never open when hot.
- Hot coolant will scald you.
- Relief pressure valve begins to open at 29kPa.

Transmission Fluid

Specified fluid: Honda BEVF-Type 2.0

Have a dealer check the fluid level and replace if necessary.

Follow your vehicle's maintenance service timing of when to change transmission fluid.



Do not mix Honda BEVF-Type 2.0 with other transmission fluids.

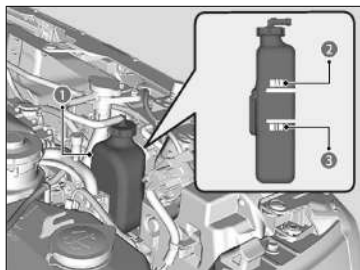
Using a transmission fluid other than Honda BEVF-Type 2.0 may adversely affect the operation and durability of your vehicle's transmission, and damage the transmission.

Any damage caused by using a transmission fluid that is not equivalent to Honda BEVF-Type 2.0 is not covered by Honda's new vehicle limited warranty.

High Voltage System Coolant

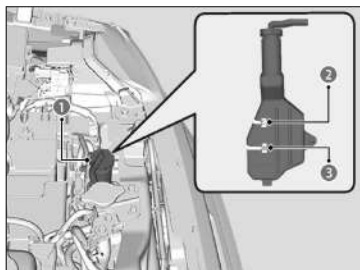
Checking the Coolant

▼ High Voltage System Coolant Tank A



- ① Reserve Tank
- ② MAX
- ③ MIN

▼ High Voltage System Coolant Tank B



- ① Reserve Tank
- ② MAX
- ③ MIN

- [1] Check the coolant level in the reserve tank.
- [2] If the coolant level has dropped below the **MIN** level, have your vehicle serviced at a dealer.
 - » Only a properly trained technician can refill the coolant and check the system for leaks.

Climate Control Coolant

When checking the coolant level, make sure to follow the procedures listed below. If the coolant level is below the **MIN** mark, have your vehicle inspected by a dealer.

⚠ WARNING

Removing the reserve tank cap while the climate control system is hot can cause the coolant to spray out, seriously scalding you.

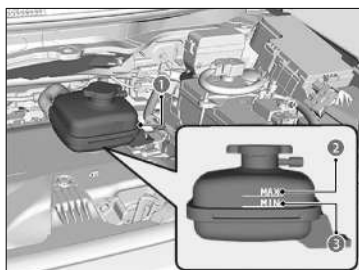
Always let the climate control system cool down before removing the reserve tank cap.

- ❗ If temperatures consistently below -30°C are expected, the coolant mixture should be changed to a higher concentration.
Consult your Honda dealer for details about a suitable coolant mixture.

- ❗ If Honda genuine coolant is not available, you may use another major brand non-silicate coolant as a temporary replacement. Check that it is a high quality coolant recommended.
Continued use of any non-Honda coolant can result in corrosion, causing the cooling system to malfunction or fail. Have the cooling system flushed and refilled with Honda genuine coolant as soon as possible.

- ❗ Do not add rust inhibitors or other additives to your vehicle's coolant system.
They may not be compatible with the coolant or with the climate control system.

Checking the Coolant



- [1] Check the coolant level in the reserve tank.
- [2] If the coolant level has dropped below the **MIN** level, have your vehicle serviced at a dealer.

» Only a properly trained technician can refill the coolant and check the system for leaks.

- ❶ Reserve Tank
- ❷ MAX
- ❸ MIN

Brake Fluid

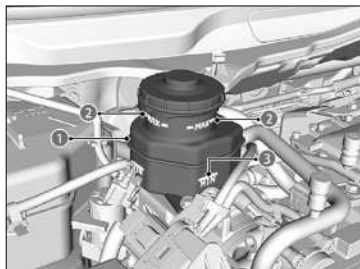
Specified fluid: Brake Fluid with DOT 3 or DOT 4

We recommend using a genuine product.

If the brake fluid level is at or below the **MIN** mark, have a dealer inspect the vehicle for leaks or worn brake pads as soon as possible.

! Brake fluid marked DOT 5 is not compatible with your vehicle's braking system and can cause extensive damage.

Checking the Brake Fluid



The fluid level should be between the **MIN** and **MAX** marks on the side of the reserve tank.

- ① Reserve Tank
- ② MAX
- ③ MIN

Refilling Window Washer Fluid



If the level is low, add washer fluid.

Pour the washer fluid carefully. Do not overflow the reservoir.



Do not use motor antifreeze or a vinegar/water solution in the windscreen washer reservoir.

Antifreeze can damage your vehicle's paint. A vinegar/water solution can damage the windscreen washer pump.

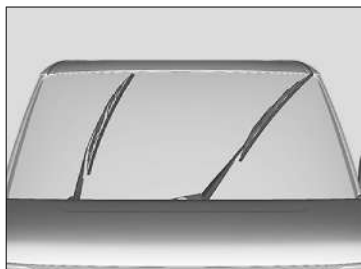
Use only commercially available windscreen washer fluid.

Avoid prolonged use of hard water to prevent lime scale buildup.

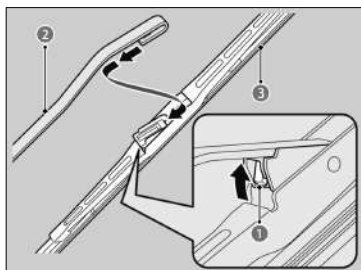
Checking and Maintaining Wiper Blades

Changing the Front Wiper Blade Rubber

If the wiper blade rubber has deteriorated, it will leave streaks and become noisy, and the hard surfaces of the blade may scratch the window glass.

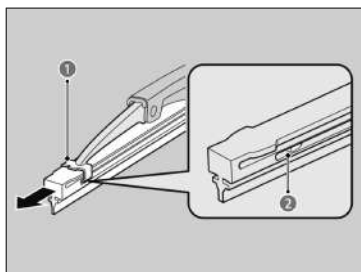


- [1] Lift the driver side wiper arm first, then the passenger side.



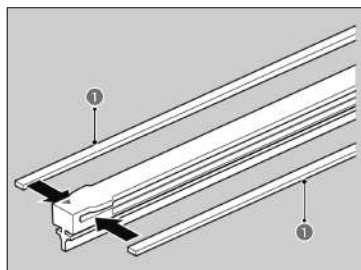
- [2] Press up on and hold the tab, then slide the holder off the wiper arm.

- ① Tab
- ② Wiper Arm
- ③ Holder



- [3] Slide the wiper blade out of the holder by pulling the tabbed end out.

- ① Holder
- ② Tabbed End

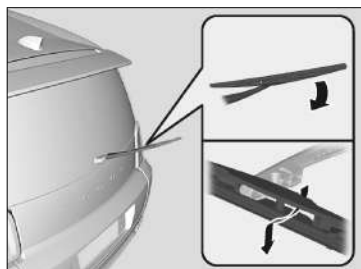


1 Retainer

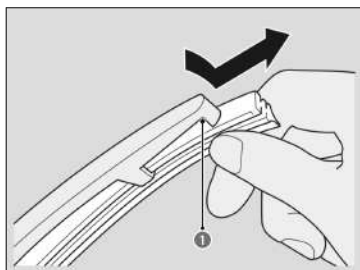
- [4] Remove the retainers from the wiper blade that has been removed, and mount to a new wiper blade.
 - » Correctly align the wiper blade protrusion and the retainer grooves.
- [5] Slide the new wiper blade onto the holder from the bottom end.
 - » The tab on the holder should fit in the indent of the wiper blade.
- [6] Slide the holder onto the wiper arm securely.
- [7] Lower the passenger side wiper arm first, then the driver side.

- The tab on the holder should fit in the indent of the wiper blade.
- After replacing it, put the wiper arm back in position.
- After attaching the blade to the wiper arm, make sure that it is firmly secured.
- Avoid dropping the wiper arm onto the windscreen, as it may damage the wiper arm and/or the windscreen.

Changing the Rear Wiper Blade Rubber

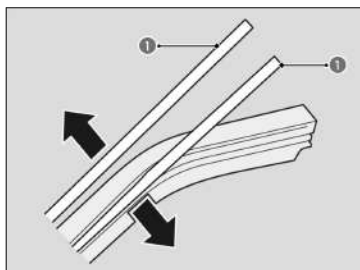


- [1] Raise the wiper arm off.
- [2] Pivot the bottom end of the wiper blade up until it comes off from the wiper arm.



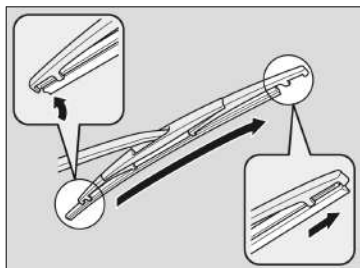
- [3] Pull the tip of the blade rubber out from the wiper stopper, then pull out the rest of the blade rubber.

1 Wiper Stopper



- [4] Remove the retainers from wiper blade and mount to a new rubber blade.

1 Retainer



- [5] Slide the new wiper blade onto the holder.
» Make sure it is engaged correctly, then install the wiper blade assembly onto the wiper arm.

- Do not try to forcefully lift up the wiper arm.
The wiper arm may be damaged if it is lifted too high.
- Avoid dropping the wiper arm, as it may damage the rear window.

Checking and Maintaining Tyres

Checking Tyres

Have a dealer check the tyres if you feel a consistent vibration while driving. New tyres and any that have been removed and reinstalled should be properly balanced.

- Measure the air pressure when tyres are cold. This means the vehicle has been parked for at least three hours, or driven less than 1.6 km (1 mile). If necessary, add or release air until the specified pressure is reached.
- If checked when hot, tyre pressure can be as much as 30–40 kPa (0.3–0.4 kgf/cm²) higher than if checked when cold.

WARNING

Using tyres that are excessively worn or improperly inflated can cause a crash in which you can be seriously hurt or killed.

Follow all instructions in this owner's manual regarding tyre inflation and maintenance.

Tyre Requirements for Safe Driving

To safely operate your vehicle, your tyres must be of the proper type and size, in good condition with adequate tread, and properly inflated.

- Tyres are the correct size and type.
- The ground beneath the tyres is in good condition.
- The tyre pressure is correct.
- The tyres do not have any wear, scratches, cracks, or foreign objects.

Inflation guidelines

Properly inflated tyres provide the best combination of handling, tread life, and comfort. Refer to the driver's doorjamb label for the specified pressure.

Underinflated tyres wear unevenly, adversely affect handling and fuel economy, and are more likely to fail from overheating.

Overinflated tyres make your vehicle ride harshly, are more prone to road hazards, and wear unevenly.

Every day before you drive, look at each of the tyres. If one looks lower than the others, check the pressure with a tyre gauge.

At least once a month or before long trips, use a gauge to measure the pressure in all tyres. Even tyres in good condition can lose 10-20 kPa (0.1-0.2 kgf/cm², 1-2 psi) per month.

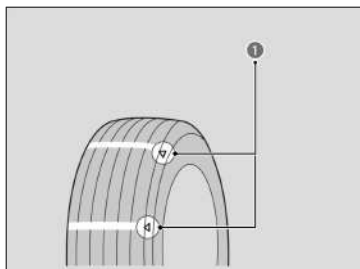
Inspection guidelines

Every time you check inflation, also examine the tyres and valve stems.

Look for:

- Bumps or bulges on the side or in the tread. Replace the tyre if you find any cuts, splits, or cracks in the side of the tyre. Replace it if you see fabric or cord.
- Remove any foreign objects and inspect for air leaks.
- Uneven tread wear. Have a dealer check the wheel alignment.
- Excessive tread wear.
- Cracks or other damage around valve stem.

Wear Indicators



The groove where the wear indicator is located is about 1.6 mm (about 1/16 inch) shallower than elsewhere on the tyre. If the tread has worn so that the indicator is exposed, replace the tyre. Worn out tyres have poor traction on wet roads.

1 Wear Indicator

Tyre Service Life

The life of your tyres is dependent on many factors, including driving habits, road conditions, vehicle loading, inflation pressure, maintenance history, speed, and environmental conditions (even when the tyres are not in use).

In addition to regular inspections and inflation pressure maintenance, it is recommended that you have annual inspections performed once the tyres reach five years old. All tyres should be removed from service after 10 years from the date of manufacture, regardless of their condition or state of wear.

Tyre and Wheel Replacement

Replace your tyres with radials of the same size, load range, speed rating, and maximum cold tyre pressure rating (as shown on the tyre's sidewall). Using tyres of a different size or construction can cause certain vehicle systems such as the ABS and Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) system to work incorrectly.

It is best to replace all four tyres at the same time. If that isn't possible, replace the front or rear tyres in pairs.

If you replace a wheel, only use TPMS specified wheels approved for your vehicle. Make sure that the wheel's specifications match those of the original wheels.

WARNING

Installing improper tyres on your vehicle can affect handling and stability.

This can cause a crash in which you can be seriously hurt or killed.

Always use the size and type of tyres recommended in the tyre information label on your vehicle.

Snow Traction Devices

If driving on snowy or frozen roads, mount winter tyres, or use tyre chains with winter tyres all together; reduce speed; and maintain sufficient distance between vehicles when driving.

Be particularly careful when operating the steering wheel or brakes to prevent skidding.

Use tyre chains together with winter tyres, winter tyres, or all season tyres when necessary or according to the law.

When mounting, refer to the following points.

If your vehicle is equipped with summer tyres, be aware that these tyres are not designed for winter driving conditions. For more information, contact a dealer.

According to the EU legislation for tyres, when winter tyres are used, it is necessary to affix a sticker with the allowable max. speed of the winter tyres clearly in the field of view of the driver, if the designed max. speed of vehicle is higher than the allowed max. speed of winter tyre. A sticker is obtainable from your tyre dealer. If you have any question, consult a dealer.

For winter tyres

For winter tyres:

- Select the size and load ranges that are the same as the original tyres.

- Mount the tyres to all four wheels.

Original Tyre Size	Recommended Winter Tyres:
185/55R15 82V	Ultra-Grip 9+
185/55R15 82V	Winter Contact TS 870

For tyre chains or traction devices

For tyre chains:

- Consult a dealer before purchasing any type of chains for your vehicle.
- Install them on the front tyres only.
- Your vehicle has limited clearance between the tyres and surrounding components. For this reason, only approved traction devices may be used.

Original Tyre Size ^{*1}	Recommended device
185/55R15 82V	AutoSock HP600 ^{*2}

*1: Original tyre size is mentioned on the tyre information label on the driver's doorjamb.

*2: Install with winter tyres.

When tyre chains are mounted, follow the chain manufacturer's instructions regarding vehicle operational limits ;however, do not exceed 30 km/h(18 mph). Use tyre chains only in an emergency or when they are legally required for driving through a certain area.

Use greater caution when driving with tyre chains on snow or ice. They may have less-predictable handling than good winter tyres without chains.

WARNING

Using the wrong chains, or not properly installing chains, can damage the brake lines and cause a crash in which you can be seriously injured or killed. Follow all instructions in this owner's manual regarding the selection and use of tyre chains.



Traction devices that are the wrong size or improperly installed can damage your vehicle's brake lines, suspension, body, and wheels. Stop driving if they are hitting any part of the vehicle.

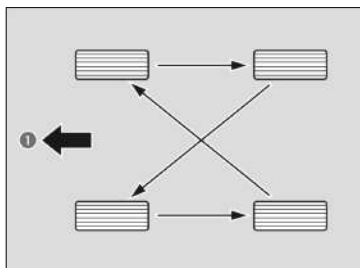
- Follow the chain manufacturer's instruction when installing. Mount them as tightly as you can.
- Check that the chains do not touch the brake lines or suspension.

- Drive slowly.

Tyre Rotation

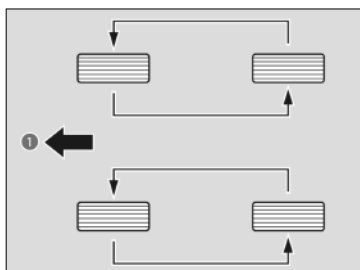
Rotating tyres according to the maintenance schedule helps to distribute wear more evenly and increase tyre life.

Tyres without rotation marks



1 Front

Tyres with rotation marks



1 Front

- Directional tyres should be mounted with the rotation indication mark facing forward.

Wheel nut torque for the tyres that come standard-equipped with your vehicle is as follows.

Wheel nut torque:

108 N · m (11 kgf · m, 80 lbf · ft)

When the tyres are rotated, make sure the air pressures are checked.

12-Volt Battery

Maintaining 12-Volt Battery

When you find corrosion, clean the 12-volt battery terminals by applying a baking powder and water solution.

Clean the terminals with a damp towel. Cloth/towel dry the 12-volt battery. Coat the terminals with grease to help prevent future corrosion.

When replacing the 12-volt battery, the replacement must be of the same specifications.

Consult a dealer for more information.

Emergency Procedures

Eyes: Flush with water from a cup or other container for at least 15 minutes. (Water under pressure can damage the eye.) Call a physician immediately.

Skin: Remove contaminated clothing. Flush the skin with large quantities of water. Call a physician immediately.

Swallowing: Drink water or milk. Call a physician immediately.

WARNING

The 12-volt battery gives off explosive hydrogen gas during normal operation.

A spark or open flame can cause the 12-volt battery to explode with enough force to kill or seriously hurt you.

Keep all sparks, open flames, and smoking materials away from the 12-volt battery.

Wear protective clothing and a face shield, or have a skilled technician do any 12-volt battery maintenance.

⚠ WARNING

The battery contains sulfuric acid (electrolyte) which is highly corrosive and poisonous.

Getting electrolyte in your eyes or on your skin can cause serious burns.

Wear protective clothing and eye protection when working on or near the battery.

Swallowing electrolyte can cause fatal poisoning if immediate action is not taken.

KEEP OUT OF THE REACH OF CHILDREN

The 12-volt battery installed in this vehicle is specifically designed for a model with System Updates.

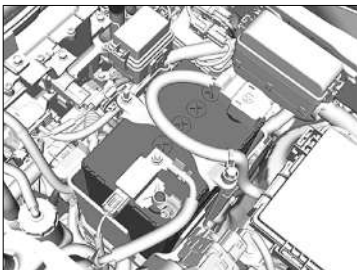
Using a 12-volt battery other than this specified type may shorten the battery life, and prevent System Updates from activating. If you need to replace the battery, make sure to select the specified type and size. Ask a dealer for more details.

 About Specifications  P.350

Checking the 12-Volt Battery

The condition of the 12-volt battery is monitored by a sensor located on the negative terminal of the 12-volt battery. If there is a problem with this sensor, the driver information interface will display a warning message. If this happens, have your vehicle inspected by a dealer.

Check the 12-volt battery terminals for corrosion monthly.



If your vehicle's 12-volt battery is disconnected or goes dead:

- The audio system is disabled.
- The clock resets.

- The immobilizer system needs to be reset.

 Indicator List  P.260

Charging the 12-Volt Battery

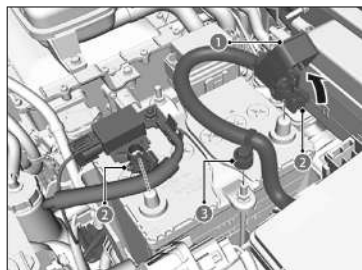
Disconnect both 12-volt battery cables to prevent damaging your vehicle's electrical system.

Always disconnect the negative $\ominus$ cable first, and reconnect it last.

If the battery cable is removed while a system update is being performed, the electrical system can be permanently damaged. Only remove the battery cable when a system update is not being performed.

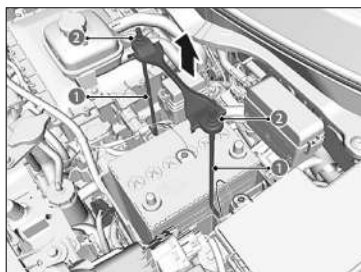
Replacing the 12-Volt Battery

When you remove and replace the battery, always follow the maintenance safety and the warnings for when checking the battery to prevent potential hazards.



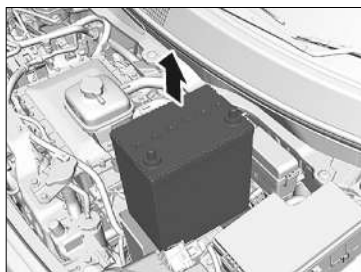
- 1** Cover
- 2** Nut
- 3** Clamp

- [1] Set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF. Open the bonnet.
- [2] Pull out the clamp.
- [3] Loosen the nut on the negative battery cable, then disconnect the cable from the negative $\ominus$ terminal.
- [4] Open the positive battery terminal cover. Loosen the nut on the positive battery cable, then disconnect the cable from the positive $\oplus$ terminal.



- 1** Stays
2 Nut

- [5] Loosen the nut on each side of the battery bracket with a wrench.
[6] Pull the bottom end of each battery stay out of the hole on the battery base, and remove the combination of the battery bracket and the stays.



- [7] Take out the battery carefully.

This symbol on the battery means that this product must not be treated as household waste.



This symbol on the battery means that this product must not be treated as household waste.

To install a new battery, reverse this procedure.
Always disconnect the negative $\ominus$ cable first, and reconnect it last.

! An improperly disposed of battery can be harmful to the environment and human health. Always confirm local regulations for battery disposal.

12-Volt Battery Label

Example



DANGER

- Keep flames and sparks away from the battery. The battery produces explosive gas that can cause an explosion.
- Wear eye protection and rubber gloves when handling the battery to avoid risk of burns or loss of eyesight if exposed to battery electrolyte.
- Do not allow children to handle the battery, under any circumstance. Ensure that anyone handling the battery has a proper understanding of the hazards and correct handling procedures involved.
- Handle battery electrolyte with extreme care, as it contains dilute sulfuric acid. Exposure to eyes or skin can cause burns or loss of eyesight.
- Read this manual carefully, and understand it before handling the battery. Failure to do so can cause personal injury and damage to the vehicle.
- Do not use the battery if the level of electrolyte is at or below the recommended level. Using the battery with low electrolyte can cause it to explode, causing serious injury.

Climate Control System Maintenance

Air Conditioning

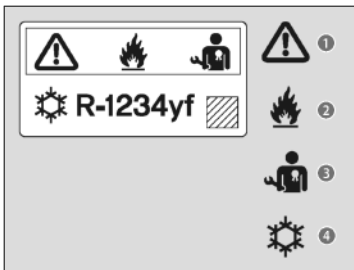
For proper and safe operation of the heating and cooling system /climate control system, the refrigerant system should only be served by a qualified technician. Never repair or replace the air conditioning evaporator (cooling coil) with one removed from a used or salvaged vehicle.

Refrigerant in your vehicle's air conditioning system is flammable and can be ignited during servicing if proper procedures are not followed.

The air conditioner label is found under the bonnet:

 Label Locations ►P.52

 About Specifications ►P.350



- ❶ Caution
- ❷ Flammable Refrigerant
- ❸ Requires a qualified technician to service
- ❹ Air Conditioning System

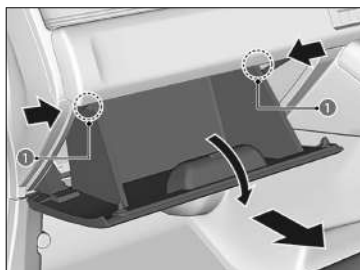


Vented refrigerant is harmful to the environment.

To avoid refrigerant from venting, never replace the evaporator with one removed from a used or salvaged vehicle.

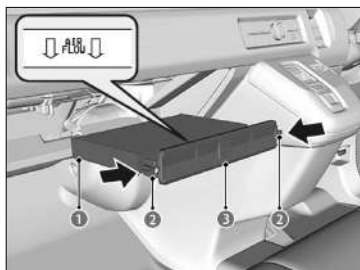
How to Replace the Dust and Pollen Filter

Replace the dust and pollen filter according to your vehicle's recommended maintenance schedule. It is recommended to replace the filter even sooner if the vehicle has been driven in a dusty environment.



- [1] Open the glove box.
- [2] Disengage the two tabs by pushing on each side panel, then push down the stop.
- [3] Pivot the glove box out of the way.

1 Stopper



- [4] Push in the tabs on the corners of the filter case cover, and remove it.
- [5] Remove the filter from the case.
- [6] Install a new filter in the case.
 - » Put the **AIR FLOW** arrow directed side down.

1 Dust and Pollen Filter

2 Tab

3 Cover

If you are not sure how to replace the dust and pollen filter, have it replaced by a dealer.

Cleaning

Interior Care

Use a vacuum cleaner to remove dust before using a cloth.

Use a damp cloth with a mixture of mild detergent and warm water to remove dirt.

Use a clean cloth to remove detergent residue.



Do not spill liquids inside the vehicle.

Electrical devices and systems may malfunction if liquids are splashed on them.



Do not use silicone-based sprays on electrical devices such as audio devices and switches.

Doing so may cause the items to malfunction or cause a fire inside the vehicle.

If a silicone-based spray is inadvertently used on electrical devices, consult a dealer.



Depending on their composition, chemicals and liquid aromatics may cause discolouration, wrinkles, and cracking to resin-based parts and textiles.

Do not use alkali solvents or organic solvents such as benzene or petrol.



After using chemicals, make sure to gently wipe them away using a dry cloth.

Do not place used cloths on top of resin-based parts or textiles for long periods of time without washing.

Cleaning Seat Belts

Use a soft brush with a mixture of mild soap and warm water to clean the seat belts.

Let the belts air dry. Wipe the loops of the seat belt anchorages using a clean cloth.

Cleaning The Window

Wipe using a glass cleaner.

The front side windows are laminated with UV- and/or IR-cut. When cleaning the interior side of the windows, make sure to use a soft damp cloth.

! Wires are mounted to the inside of the rear window. Wipe along the same direction as the wires with a soft cloth so as not to damage them.

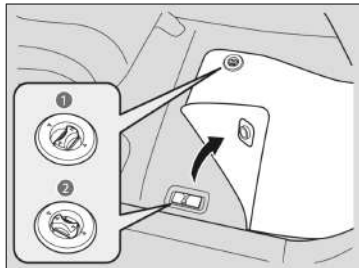
! To ensure the longevity of the UV- and/or IR-cut, avoid:

- Opening and closing the windows when they are covered with dirt and other debris.
- Using a glass cleaner containing polishing compounds, wax, or detergents.

! Be careful not to spill fluids, such as water or glass cleaner, on or around the cover of the electrical components around the rearview mirror.

Floor Mats

Example



The driver's floor mat hooks over floor anchorages, which keep the mat from sliding forward.

Do not put any additional floor mats on top of the anchored mat.

- 1** Unlock
- 2** Lock

! If you use any floor mats that were not originally provided with your vehicle, make sure they are designed for your specific vehicle, fit correctly, and are securely anchored by the floor anchorages. Position any rear seat floor mats properly. If not properly positioned, the floor mats can interfere with the front seat functions.

Exterior Care

Dust off the vehicle body after you drive. Regularly inspect your vehicle for scratches on painted surfaces. A scratch on a painted surface can result in body rust. If you find a scratch, promptly repair it.

Washing the Vehicle

Wash the vehicle regularly. Wash more frequently when driving in the following conditions:

- If driving on roads with road salt.
- If driving in coastal areas.
- If tar, soot, bird droppings, insects, or tree sap is stuck to painted surfaces.

Do not spray water into the air intake vents. It can cause a malfunction.

If water and any chemicals are on the brakes when your vehicle is being washed, drive a short distance and apply the brakes several times before parking. Parking while brakes are wet may cause them to be stuck by rust.

- Lock the doors when washing the vehicle. Do not spray water onto the charge lid directly. A high-pressure spray may cause it to open.

! When using an automated car wash that pulls the vehicle through with a conveyor, make sure the transmission is in **N** position.

Q **N** Position Holding Mode (Car Wash Mode) **▶ P.93**

Using High Pressure Cleaners

- Keep sufficient distance between the cleaning nozzle and the vehicle body.
- Take particular care around the windows. Standing too close may cause water to enter the vehicle interior.
- Do not spray high pressure water directly into the motor room compartment. Instead, use low pressure water and a mild detergent.

- Do not spray water under the bonnet where the electric motor and other high voltage system components are located. It could cause a malfunction.
- Do not spray water directly at the charging port.
- Do not spray water directly onto the camera or the area around it. Water may enter the lens and cause the camera to malfunction.
- Chemical solvents and strong cleaners can damage the paint, metal, and plastic on your vehicle. Wipe away spills immediately.

Maintaining the Bumpers and Other Resin-Coated Parts

If you get coolant, or 12-volt battery fluid on resin-coated parts, they may stain or the coating may peel. Promptly wipe it away using a soft cloth and clean water.

- Ask a dealer about the correct coating material when you want to repair the painted surface of the parts made of resin.

Cleaning the Window

Wipe using a glass cleaner.

Maintaining Aluminium Wheels

Aluminium is susceptible to deterioration caused by salt and other road contaminants. When necessary, as early as possible use a sponge and mild detergent to wipe away these contaminants. Do not use a stiff brush or harsh chemicals (including some commercial wheel cleaners). These can damage the protective finish on aluminium alloy wheels, resulting in corrosion. Depending on the type of finish, the wheels also may lose their lustre or appear burnished. To avoid water stains, wipe the wheels dry with a cloth while they are still wet.

Handling the Unexpected

Tools

Types of Tools..... 312

When a Lightbulb Goes Out

About the Vehicle's LED Exterior Lighting..... 313

Remote Transmitter Care

Replacing the Remote Battery..... 314

If a Tyre Goes Flat

Temporarily Repairing a Flat Tyre..... 317

Injecting Sealant and Air..... 319

Inflating an Under-inflated Tyre..... 324

Handling of the jack

Jacking Points..... 326

Power System Won't Start

Checking the Procedure..... 327

If the Keyless Remote Battery is Weak..... 328

Emergency Power System Off..... 328

Emergency Power System On..... 328

If the 12-volt Battery Is Dead

Jump Starting Procedure..... 330

What to Do After the Power System Starts..... 331

When a Warning Appears

If the **Reduced stopping power** Warning Appears
..... 332

If the **High voltage battery thermal problem**
Warning Appears..... 333

Fuses

Checking Fuses..... 334

Inspecting and Changing Fuses..... 338

Emergency Towing

About Towing..... 340

If You Cannot Unlock the Charge Lid

If You Cannot Unlock the Charge Lid..... 342

If You Cannot Disengage the Charging Connector

What to Do If Unable to Disengage the Charging
Connector..... 343

If You Cannot Open the Tailgate

What to Do If Unable to Open the Tailgate..... 344

Emergency Call (eCall)

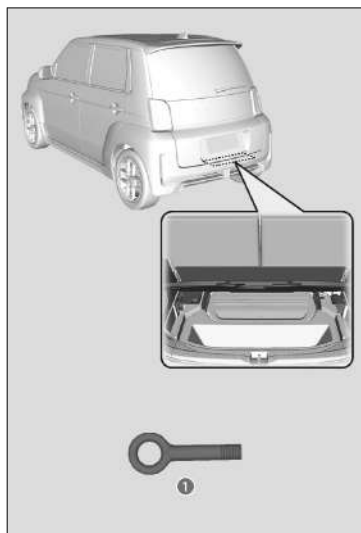
Automatic Emergency Call..... 345

Manual Emergency Call..... 347

Tools

Types of Tools

1 Detachable Towing Hook



The tools are stored in the luggage area.

When a Lightbulb Goes Out

About the Vehicle's LED Exterior Lighting

The following lights are LED lights. Have an authorised Honda dealer inspect and replace them.

- Headlights
- Front Turn Signal/Emergency Indicator Lights
- Position/Daytime Running Lights
- Side Turn Signal/Emergency Indicator Lights
- Brake Lights
- Taillights
- High-Mount Brake Light
- Rear Fog Light
- Rear Turn Signal/Emergency Indicator Lights
- Back-Up Lights
- Rear Licence Plate Light
- Charge Lid Light

The headlight aim is set by the factory, and does not need to be adjusted. However, if you regularly carry heavy items in the luggage area, have the aiming readjusted at a dealer or by a qualified technician.

Remote Transmitter Care

Replacing the Remote Battery

If the indicator does not come on when the button is pressed, replace the battery.

Replacement batteries are commercially available or at a dealer.

A warning mark  is located adjacent to the button battery*.

WARNING

CHEMICAL BURN HAZARD

The battery that powers the remote transmitter can cause severe internal burns and can even lead to death if swallowed.

Keep new and used batteries away from children.

If you suspect that a child has swallowed the battery, seek medical attention immediately.

CAUTION: Danger of explosion if battery is incorrectly replaced. Replace only with the same or equivalent type.

CAUTION: Do not exposed to excessive heat such as sunshine, fire or the like, that can result in an explosion or the leakage of flammable liquid or gas during use, storage or transportation.

CAUTION: Do not dispose of a battery into fire or a hot oven, or give mechanically crushing or cutting of a battery, that can result in an explosion.

CAUTION: Do not subjected to extremely low air pressure at high altitude that may result in an explosion or the leakage of flammable liquid or gas.



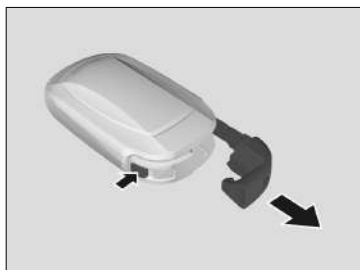
An improperly disposed of battery can damage the environment.
Always confirm local regulations for battery disposal.

*: Not available on all models



This symbol on the battery means that this product must not be treated as household waste.

Keyless Remote

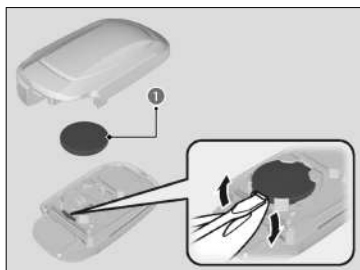


[1] Remove the built-in key.



[2] With the buttons facing down, remove the upper half of the cover by carefully prying on the slot with the key grip.

- » Wrap a key grip with a cloth to prevent scratching the keyless remote.
- » Remove carefully to avoid losing the buttons.



[3] Make sure to replace the battery with the correct polarity.

1 Battery

Battery type: CR2032

- Wrap a flat-tip screwdriver with a cloth to prevent scratching the keyless remote.

If a Tyre Goes Flat

Temporarily Repairing a Flat Tyre

If the tyre has a large cut or is otherwise severely damaged, you will need to have the vehicle towed. If the tyre only has a small puncture, from a nail for instance, you can use the temporary tyre repair kit so that you can drive to the nearest service station for a more permanent repair.

How to Park Your Vehicle

If a tyre goes flat while driving, grasp the steering wheel firmly, and brake gradually to reduce speed. Then, stop in a safe place.

- [1] Park the vehicle on a firm, level, non-slippery surface and apply the parking brake.
- [2] Put the transmission into **P**.
- [3] Turn on the hazard warning lights and set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF.

! The kit should not be used in the following situations. Instead, contact a dealer or a roadside assistant to have the vehicle towed.

- The tyre sealant has expired.
- More than one tyre is punctured.
- The puncture or cut is larger than 4mm (3/16 inch).
- The tyre side wall is damaged or the puncture is outside the tyre area.
- Damage has been caused by driving with the tyres extremely under inflated.
- The tyre bead is no longer seated.
- The rim is damaged.

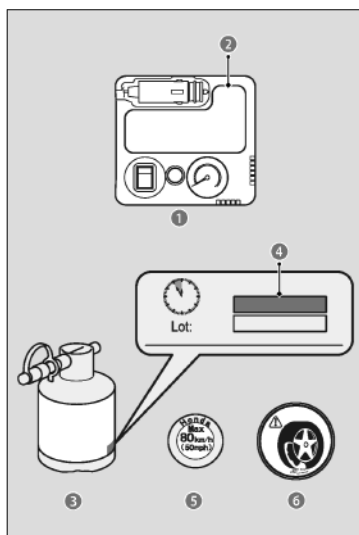
! Do not remove a nail or screw that punctured the tyre.
If you remove it from the tyre, you may not be able to repair the puncture using the kit.

! Do not continue driving with the temporarily repaired tyre.
Do not use the temporary repairs for any purpose other than moving your vehicle to the nearest service station to receive professional repairs.

! Do not use a puncture-repairing agent other than the one provided in the kit that came with your vehicle.

If a different agent is used, you may permanently damage the tyre pressure sensor.

Getting Ready to Temporarily Repair the Flat Tyre

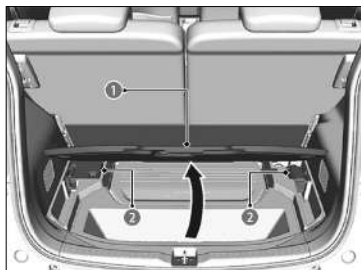


- 1** Air Compressor (PUMP)
- 2** Label
- 3** Sealant Bottle (BOTTLE)
- 4** Expiration Date
- 5** Speed Limit Label
- 6** Wheel Label

! When using the compressor, please note the following points.

- Avoid getting water on it during rain.
- Do not place the product directly on a sandy or dusty area before using it, as inhaling dust may cause a malfunction.
- Do not lubricate with oil or lubricant.
- Never disassemble or modify the product.
- Do not subject the compressor to any impacts. This may cause a malfunction.

Taking out the Tyre Repair Kit

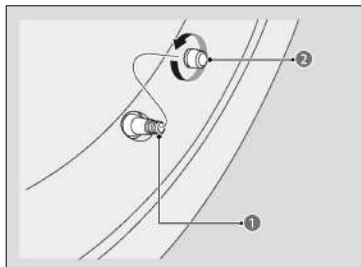


- [1] Open the luggage area floor lid.
- [2] Take the kit out of the tool box.

- ① Floor Lid
- ② Temporary Tyre Repair Kit

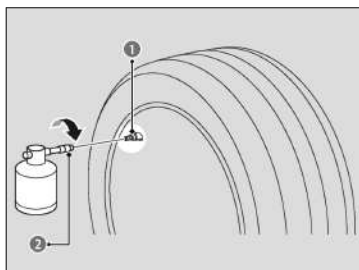
When making a temporary repair, carefully read the instruction manual provided with the kit.

Injecting Sealant and Air



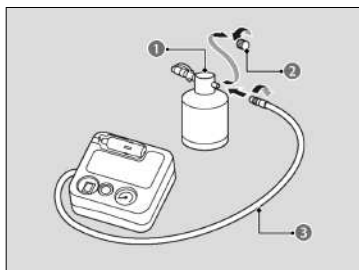
- [1] Remove the valve cap from the tyre valve stem.

- ① Valve Stem
- ② Valve Cap



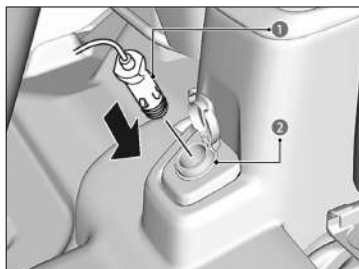
- 1** Valve Stem
- 2** Sealant/Air Hose

- [2] Shake the sealant bottle.
- [3] Attach the sealant/air hose onto the tyre valve stem. Screw it until it is tight.
 - » Make sure the bottle remains upright to ensure all the sealant flows into the tyre.



- 1** Bottle Adapter
- 2** Bottle Cap
- 3** Air Compressor Hose

- [4] Remove the bottle cap from the bottle adapter.
- [5] Attach the air compressor hose onto the bottle adapter. Screw it until it is tight.

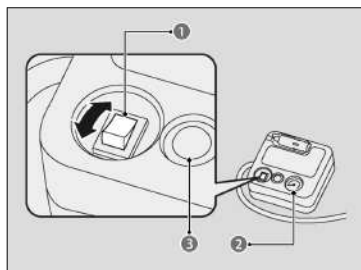


- 1** Plug
- 2** Accessory Power Socket

- [6] Plug in the air compressor to the accessory power socket.
 - » Be careful not to pinch the cord in a door or window.

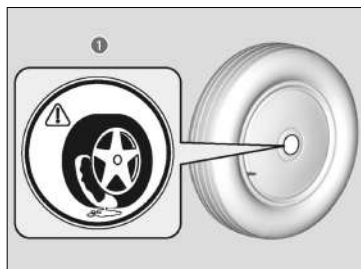
 [Accessory Power Socket](#)  P.143

- [7] Turn on the vehicle's power system.



- 1** Air Compressor Switch
- 2** Air Pressure Gauge
- 3** Deflate Button

- [8] Turn the air compressor switch on to inflate the tyre.
 - » The air compressor starts injecting sealant and air into the tyre.
- [9] After the air pressure reaches to specified pressure, turn off the kit.
 - » Check the air pressure gauge on the air compressor.
 - » Refer to the driver's doorjamb label for the specified pressure.
 - » If overinflated, press the deflate button.
- [10] Unplug the kit from the accessory power socket.
- [11] Unscrew the sealant/air hose from the tyre valve stem. Reinstall the valve cap.



- 1** Wheel Label

- [12] Apply the wheel label to the flat surface of the wheel.
 - » The wheel surface must be clean to ensure the label adheres properly.

Keep the power system on while injecting sealant and air.

- Until the sealant injection is complete, the pressure shown on the pressure gauge will appear higher than actual. After the sealant injection is complete the pressure will drop and then begin to rise again as the tyre is inflated with air. This is normal.
- To accurately measure the air pressure using the gauge, turn the air compressor off only after the sealant injection is complete.
- If the required air pressure is not reached within 10 minutes, the tyre may be too severely damaged for the kit to provide the necessary seal and your vehicle will need to be towed.
- See a Honda dealer for a replacement sealant bottle and proper disposal of an empty bottle.
- Turn the air compressor off when connecting the air compressor hose.
- You may hear a motor sound coming from the activated air compressor. This is normal.
- Inform the use of tyre sealant when you ask a Honda dealer or the road assistant service for replacing or repairing the flat tyre.

- !** Do not operate the temporary tyre repair kit compressor for more than 10 minutes.
The compressor can overheat and become permanently damaged.

- !** The sealant can permanently stain clothing and other materials.
Be careful during handling and wipe away any spills immediately.

⚠ WARNING

Tyre sealant contains substances that are harmful and can be fatal if swallowed.

If accidentally swallowed, do not induce vomiting. Drink plenty of water and get medical attention immediately.

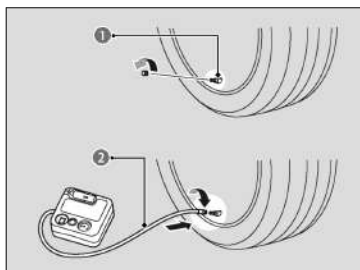
For skin or eye contact, flush with cool water and get medical attention if necessary.

Distributing the Sealant in the Tyre

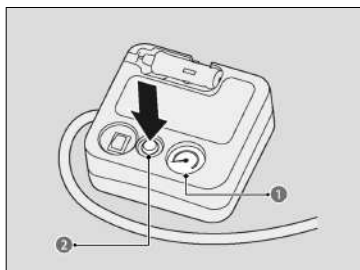


- [1] Apply the speed limit label to the location as shown.
- [2] Drive the vehicle for about 10 minutes.
» Do not exceed 80 km/h (50 mph).
- [3] Stop the vehicle in a safe place.

1 Speed Limit Label



- 1 Valve Stem
- 2 Air Compressor Hose



- 1 Air Pressure Gauge
- 2 Deflate Button

[4] Attach the air compressor hose onto the tyre valve stem.

[5] Recheck the air pressure using the gauge on the air compressor.

» Do not turn the air compressor on to check the pressure.

[6] If the air pressure is:

- Less than 130 kPa (1.3 kgf/cm², 19 psi):
Do not add air or continue driving. The leak is too severe. Call for help and have your vehicle towed.

[Q About Towing](#) ▶ P.340

- Specified pressure or more:
Continue driving for another 10 minutes or until you reach the nearest service station.
Do not exceed 80 km/h (50 mph).
- Greater than 130 kPa (1.3 kgf/cm²), but less than specified pressure:
Turn the air compressor switch on to inflate the tyre until the tyre pressure reaches specified pressure.

[Q Inflating an Under-inflated Tyre](#) ▶ P.324

Then drive carefully for 10 more minutes or until you reach the nearest service station. Do not exceed 80 km/h (50 mph).

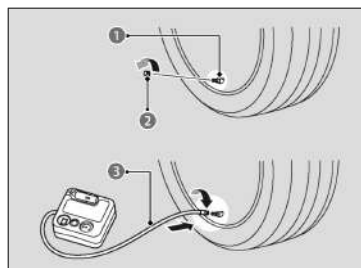
» You should repeat this procedure as long as the air pressure is within this range.

[7] Repackage and properly stow the kit.

- Do not exceed 80 km/h (50 mph).
- Refer to the driver's doorjamb label for the specified pressure.

Inflating an Under-inflated Tyre

You can use the kit to inflate a non-punctured under-inflated tyre.

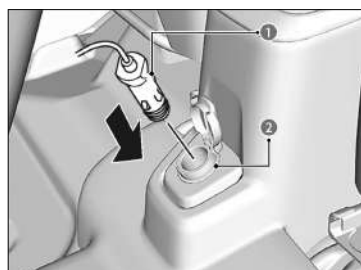


- 1 Valve Stem
- 2 Valve Cap
- 3 Air Compressor Hose

- [1] Open the luggage area floor lid.
- [2] Take the kit out of the tool box.
- [3] Place the kit face up on flat ground near the tyre to be inflated, away from traffic.

Do not place the kit on its side.

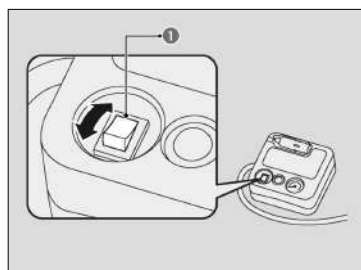
- [4] Remove the sealant/air hose from the kit.
- [5] Attach the air compressor hose onto the bottle adapter. Screw it until it is tight.



- 1 Plug
- 2 Accessory Power Socket

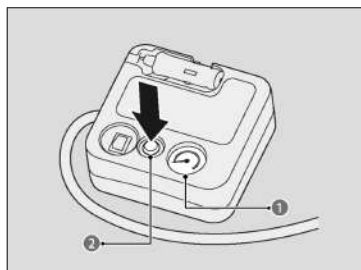
- [6] Plug in the air compressor to the accessory power socket.
- » Be careful not to pinch the cord in a door or window.

 Accessory Power Socket ► P.143



- 1 Air Compressor Switch

- [7] Turn the air compressor switch on to inflate the tyre.
- » The compressor starts to inject air into the tyre.
- » If you have started the power system, leave it running while injecting air.
- [8] Inflate the tyre to the specified air pressure.



1 Air Pressure Gauge

2 Deflate Button

- [9] Turn off the kit.
 - » Check the pressure gauge on the air compressor.
 - » If overinflated, press the deflate button.
- [10] Unplug the power plug from the accessory power socket.
- [11] Unscrew the air hose from the tyre valve stem. Reinstall the valve cap.
- [12] Repackage and properly stow the kit.

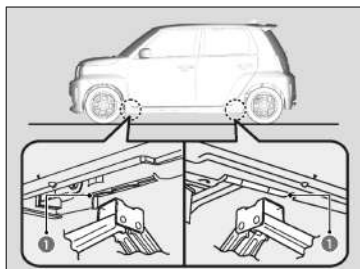
Keep the power system on while injecting air.

- Do not operate the temporary tyre repair kit compressor for more than 10 minutes. The compressor can overheat and become permanently damaged.

Handling of the jack

Jacking Points

Your vehicle has jacking points as shown.
When replacing your tyres, consult a dealer.



1 Jacking Points

Power System Won't Start

Checking the Procedure

If the power system won't start, check the following items and take appropriate action.

Check if the related indicator or driver information interface messages come on.

- The **Temperature too low for vehicle to operate** message appears.

You must wait for an increase in the ambient temperature.

Have the vehicle towed to a warmer location.

 About Towing ▶ P.340

- The **To start, touch start button with emblem side of remote** message appears.

Make sure the keyless remote is in its operating range.

 If the Keyless Remote Battery is Weak ▶ P.328

- The transmission system indicator blinks and the **Transmission system problem. Apply parking brake when parked.** message appears.

 When Indicators Come On/Blink ▶ P.261

Check the shift position.

- The transmission is not in **P**.

Put the transmission into **P**.

Check the power system starting procedure.

Follow the instructions, and try to start the power system again.

 Turn on Power System ▶ P.89

Check the immobilizer system indicator.

- When the immobilizer system indicator is blinking, the power system cannot be turned on.

 Immobilizer System ▶ P.54

 Indicator List ▶ P.260

Check the fuses.

- Check all fuses, or have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

 Inspecting and Changing Fuses ▶ P.338

If you cannot turn on the power system after checking all the items above, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

If you must start the vehicle immediately, use an assisting vehicle or booster battery to jump start it.

 Jump Starting Procedure ▶ P.330

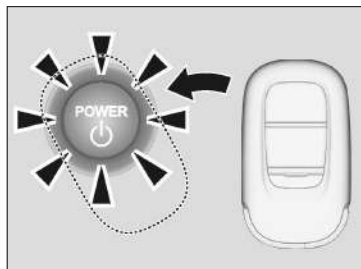
Depending on the situation, it may be possible to temporarily turn the power system on using the emergency starting procedure.

 Emergency Power System On ▶ P.328

Do not hold the **POWER** button for more than 15 seconds.

If the Keyless Remote Battery is Weak

Follow the steps below if the **POWER** button does not turn on the power.



- [1] Press the **POWER** button.
- [2] Touch the centre of the **POWER** button with the keyless remote within 30 seconds. The buttons on the keyless remote should be facing you.
- [3] Depress and hold the brake pedal, then press the **POWER** button within 10 seconds.
 - » If you don't depress the pedal, the mode will change to ACCESSORY.

Emergency Power System Off

The **POWER** button may be used to turn the power system off due to an emergency situation even while driving. If you must turn the power system off, do either of the following operations:

- Press and hold the **POWER** button for about two seconds.
- Firmly press the **POWER** three times.
- The steering wheel will not lock.

! If the power mode is set to ACCESSORY while driving, the power system will shut down and all steering and brake power assist functions will stop, making it difficult to control the vehicle.

Emergency Power System On

If the power system cannot be turned on using the normal starting procedure, you may be able to turn it on using the emergency starting procedure below. Do not use this procedure if it is not an emergency.

- [1] Make sure the parking brake is applied.
- [2] Check that the transmission is in **P**, then set the power mode to ACCESSORY.

- [3] Firmly depress the brake pedal, then press and hold the **POWER** button for at least 15 seconds.

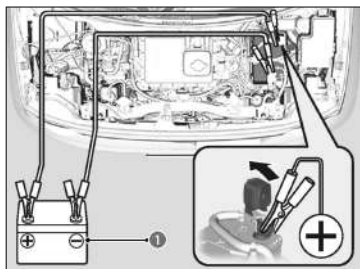
This should be considered a system malfunction even if you are able to turn the power system on using the above procedure.

Have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately.

If the 12-volt Battery Is Dead

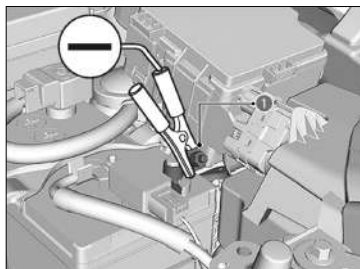
Jump Starting Procedure

Turn off the power to electric devices, such as audio and lights. Turn off the power system, then open the bonnet.



1 Booster Battery

- [1] Connect the first jumper cable to your vehicle's battery $\oplus$ terminal.
- [2] Connect the other end of the first jumper cable to the booster battery $\oplus$ terminal.
 - » Use a 12-volt booster battery only.
 - » When using an automotive battery charger to boost your 12-volt battery, select a lower charging voltage than 15-volt. Check the charger manual for the proper setting.



1 Battery $\ominus$ Terminal

- [3] Connect the second jumper cable to the booster battery $\ominus$ terminal.
- [4] Connect the other end of the second jumper cable to the battery $\ominus$ terminal as shown. Do not connect this jumper cable to any other part.
- [5] If your vehicle is connected to another vehicle, start the assisting vehicle's engine and increase its RPM slightly.
- [6] Attempt to start your vehicle's engine. If it turns over slowly, check that the jumper cables have good metal-to-metal contact.

⚠ WARNING

A 12-volt battery can explode if you do not follow the correct procedure, seriously injuring anyone nearby.

Keep all sparks, open flames, and smoking materials away from the 12-volt battery.



If a 12-volt battery sits in extreme cold, the electrolyte inside can freeze.

Attempting to jump start with a frozen 12-volt battery can cause it to rupture.

! Securely attach the jumper cables' clips so that they do not come off when the power system vibrates.

Be careful not to tangle the jumper cables or allow the cable ends to touch each other while attaching or detaching the jumper cables.

! 12-volt battery performance degrades in cold conditions and may prevent the power system from starting.

! You cannot use the terminal to jump start another vehicle or to charge the 12-volt battery.

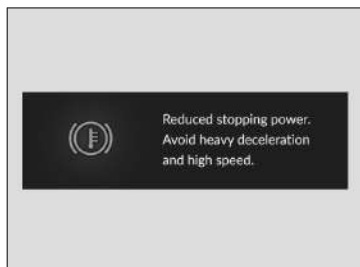
What to Do After the Power System Starts

Once your vehicle's power system has started, remove the jumper cables in the following order.

- [1] Disconnect the jumper cable from your vehicle's ground.
- [2] Disconnect the other end of the jumper cable from the booster battery $\ominus$ terminal.
- [3] Disconnect the jumper cable from your vehicle's 12-volt battery $\oplus$ terminal.
- [4] Disconnect the other end of the jumper cable from the booster battery $\oplus$ terminal.

When a Warning Appears

If the Reduced stopping power Warning Appears



Reasons for the warning to appear

Appears when braking ability is reduced.

What to do as soon as the warning appears

Slow down and drive carefully. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

If the High voltage battery thermal problem Warning Appears



High voltage battery thermal problem.
Stop driving when safe
then evacuate the vehicle.



High voltage battery thermal problem.
Apply parking brake then
evacuate the vehicle.



High voltage battery thermal problem.
Evacuate the vehicle.

Reasons for the warning to appear

One of these messages will display when the system detects that the High Voltage battery temperature may be Refer to the message to take appropriate action, and contact a Honda dealer.

WARNING

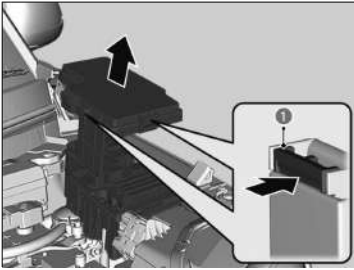
Do not approach the vehicle since it may emit harmful fumes.
Even if the vehicle stops producing fumes, it may start again after some time.

Fuses

Checking Fuses

If any electrical devices are not working, set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF and check to see if any applicable fuse is blown.

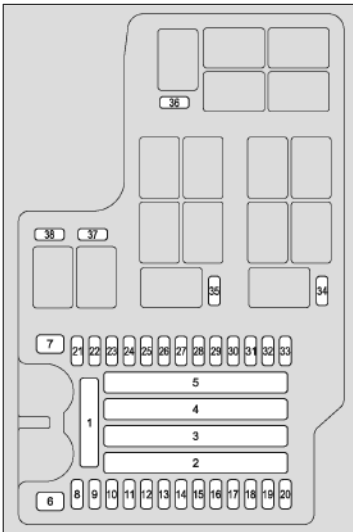
Motor Room Compartment Fuse Box



Located at the motor room compartment on the left side.

» Push the tabs (1) to open the box.

- Fuse locations are shown on the image below. Locate the fuse in question by the fuse number in the image and chart.



Circuit protected and fuse rating

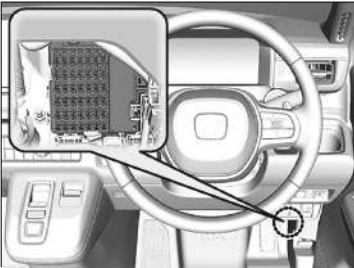
	Circuit Protected	Amps
1	— Battery	125A
	— —	40A
	— —	40A
	— —	40A
2	— —	40A
	— Blower Motor	30A
	— —	40A
	— Audio Amp	30A
	— —	30A
	— —	30A
	— —	70A
3	— Sub Fan	30A
	— —	40A
	— —	30A
	— Fuse Box Main	60A
	— ABS/VSA FSR	40A
	— ABS/VSA Motor	40A
	— Fuse Box Main2	40A
4	— ESB	40A
	— —	30A
	— —	40A
	— Relay Module2	30A
	— —	30A
	— Main Fan	30A
	— EPS	70A
5	— Relay Module1	30A
	— —	40A
	— —	30A
	— IG Main	60A
6	— —	—

	Circuit Protected	Amps
7	— —	—
8	— Back Up	15A
9	— Audio	15A
10	— CTR Display	7.5A
11	— AC Main	10A
12	— ECH/ECOMP	10A
13	— Rear Defroster	20A
14	— EWV ES	10A
15	— —	—
16	— ECHES	10A
17	— Heated Steering	10A
18	— —	—
19	— Charge Lid Actuator	10A
20	— BATT IR	10A
21	— Wiper	20A
22	— Drive Control	10A
23	— OBC	10A
24	— Hazard	10A
25	— ECU	7.5A
26	— EWPES	20A
27	— IGB	10A
28	— LCM R	10A
29	— Stop Lights · Horn	10A
30	— IGDTWP	20A
31	— LCM L	10A
32	— IGD	10A
33	— Super Lock	20A
34	— —	—
35	— EWP · Fan	7.5A
36	— —	—

	Circuit Protected	Amps
37	—	—

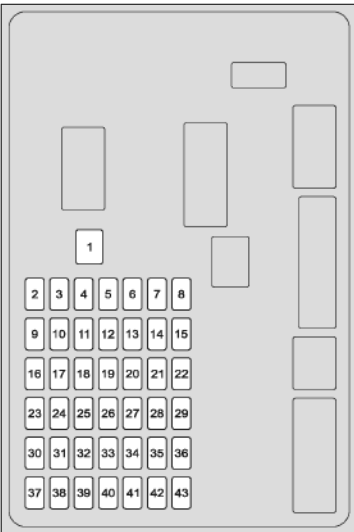
	Circuit Protected	Amps
38	—	—

Interior Fuse Box



Located under the dashboard.

- Fuse locations are shown on the image below. Locate the fuse in question by the fuse number in the image and chart.



Circuit protected and fuse rating

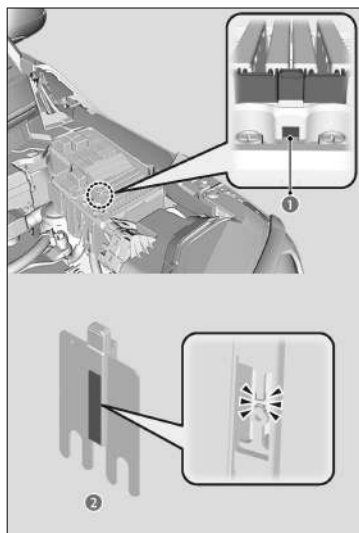
	Circuit Protected	Amps
1	—	—
2	—	—
3	Washer	15A

	Circuit Protected	Amps
4	SRS	10A
5	Rear Right Side Power Window	15A

		Circuit Protected	Amps
6	—	Rear Left Side Power Window	15A
7	—	Passenger's Side Power Window	15A
8	—	—	—
9	—	Smart	7.5A
10	—	SBW	7.5A
11	—	E-Latch	7.5A
12	—	—	—
13	—	—	—
14	—	Accessory Socket	20A
15	—	ACC	7.5A
16	—	USB Charger	10A
17	—	IMG	10A
18	—	Driver's Side Power Window	20A
19	—	—	—
20	—	SRS	10A
21	—	VSA	10A
22	—	Back Light	7.5A
23	—	Seat Heaters	10A
24	—	Option	10A

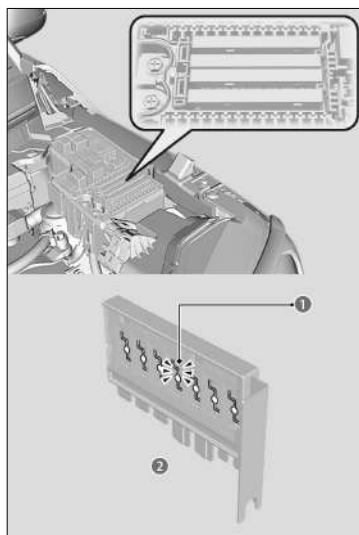
		Circuit Protected	Amps
25	—	RETRA MIRR	10A
26	—	—	—
27	—	MIRR	7.5A
28	—	AIRCON	7.5A
29	—	—	—
30	—	Right Side Door Unlock	10A
31	—	—	—
32	—	Left Side Door Unlock	10A
33	—	—	—
34	—	—	—
35	—	Left Side Door Lock	10A
36	—	Right Side Door Lock	10A
37	—	FI(EM)	10A
38	—	ED	7.5A
39	—	Rear Wiper	10A
40	—	Front Wiper	7.5A
41	—	Meter	7.5A
42	—	—	—
43	—	—	—

Inspecting and Changing Fuses



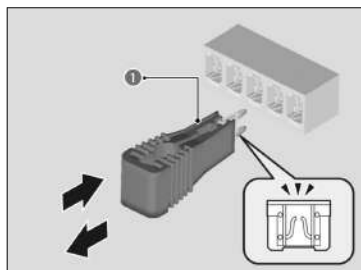
- [1] Set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF. Turn headlights and all accessories off.
- [2] Remove the fuse box cover.
- [3] Check the large fuse in the motor room compartment.
 - » Look at the fuse through the hole.
 - » If the fuse is blown, have it replaced by a dealer.

- 1** Hole
- 2** Main Fuse



- [4] Check the combined fuses in the motor room compartment fuse box.
 - » Look into the space between the fuses.
 - » If the fuse is blown, have it replaced by a dealer.

- 1** Blown Fuse
- 2** Combined Fuse



- [5] Inspect the small fuses in the motor room compartment and the vehicle interior.
- » If there is a blown fuse, remove it with a commercially available fuse puller and replace it with a new one.

1 Fuse Puller

- Replacing a fuse with one that has a higher rating greatly increases the chances of damaging the electrical system.
- Use the charts to locate the fuse in question and confirm the specified amperage.
- Replace with a fuse of the same specified amperage.

Emergency Towing

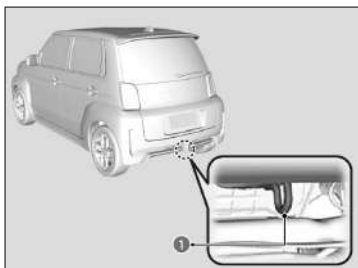
About Towing

Call a professional towing service if you need to tow your vehicle.

Always tow the vehicle with all four wheels on a flatbed, or with the front wheels lifted.

- Trying to lift or tow your vehicle by the bumpers will cause serious damage. The bumpers are not designed to support the vehicle's weight.

- !** Do not use the hook on the rear of your vehicle for the towing of other vehicles or emergency removal of your vehicle. The hook may break.



1 Hook

- When having your vehicle towed with the front wheels lifted, make sure the parking brake is released. If you cannot release the parking brake, your vehicle must be transported by the flatbed equipment.

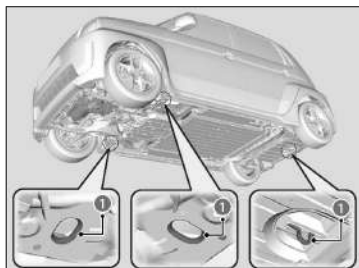
Q Parking Brake ▶ P.95

- !** Never tow your vehicle with just a rope or chain.
It is very dangerous because ropes or chains may shift from side to side or break.

- !** Improper towing such as towing behind a motorhome or other motor vehicle can damage the transmission.

Flatbed Equipment

The operator loads your vehicle on the back of a truck.
This is the best way to transport your vehicle.



When securing the vehicle on transport equipment, always use designated body tie-down points. Do not use wheel or tyre restraint methods.

1 Tie-down point

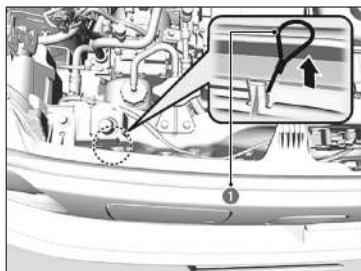
Wheel Lift Equipment

The tow truck uses two pivoting arms that go under the front tyres and lift them off the ground. The rear tyres remain on the ground. This is an acceptable way to tow your vehicle.

If You Cannot Unlock the Charge Lid

If You Cannot Unlock the Charge Lid

If you cannot open the charge lid, use the following procedure.



[1] Open the bonnet.

 Opening the Bonnet ► P.284

[2] Pull the release cord located as shown.

 How to Charge (AC 230 V) ► P.112

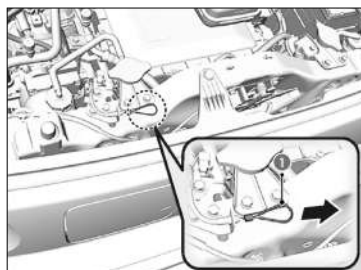
1 Release Cord

After taking this step, contact a dealer to have the vehicle checked.

If You Cannot Disengage the Charging Connector

What to Do If Unable to Disengage the Charging Connector

Disengage the charging supply connector as follows.



- [1] Make sure that charging is completed correctly.
- [2] Open the bonnet.
- [3] Pull the release cord.
- [4] Disengage the charging connector from the inlet.

When charging is completed ▶P.115

1 Release Cord

If the Remote Battery Is Weak

The charging connector cannot be disengaged if the door is locked while the keyless remote cannot be detected, such as when the battery is weak. You can disengage the charging connector by pressing the release button in the inlet by unlocking the door with the built-in key.

Replacing the Remote Battery ▶P.314

If the Keyless Remote Battery is Weak ▶P.328

If the problem that you cannot disengage the charging connector occurs repeatedly, contact a dealer to have the vehicle checked.

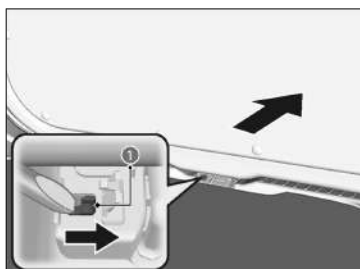
If You Cannot Open the Tailgate

What to Do If Unable to Open the Tailgate



- [1] Use a flat-tip screwdriver and open the lid on the back of the tailgate.
- » Wrap the flat-tip screwdriver with a cloth to prevent scratches.

1 Lid



- [2] To open the tailgate, push the tailgate while sliding the lever to the right with the flat-tip screwdriver.

1 Lever

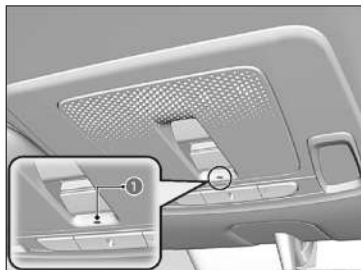
- Following up:
After taking these steps, contact a dealer to have the vehicle checked.

⚠ CAUTION

When you open the tailgate from inside, make sure there is enough space around the tailgate, and it does not hit anyone or any object.

Emergency Call (eCall)

Automatic Emergency Call



If your vehicle is involved in a collision, the vehicle will attempt to connect to a Public Safety Answering Point (PSAP) operator. Once a connection is established, various information about the vehicle will be sent to a PSAP operator with whom you will be able to speak. This information includes:

1 eCall Indicator

- Vehicle identification number (VIN)
- Type of vehicle (passenger vehicle or light-weight commercial vehicle)
- Type of energy stored for vehicle propulsion (gasoline/diesel/CNG/LPG/electricity/hydrogen)
- Last three locations of the vehicle
- Direction of travel
- Triggering mode (automatic or manual)
- Timestamp

When an emergency call is initiated, the vehicle speakers are disabled so that you can hear the operator.

When the power mode is set to ON, the eCall indicator lights up in green for 1 second, then in red for 1 second.

If the eCall system is working properly, the indicator will light up in green.

- Green: eCall system is ready.
- Blinking in green: eCall system is connected and making an eCall to an operator.
- Repeating a pattern of short flashes of the red light: The eCall system has failed to connect to an operator. The eCall indicator will continue this pattern for 5 seconds, then it will light up in green.

If the eCall system is disabled in the event of a critical system failure, the following warning will be given to the occupants of the vehicle:

- Red or blacked out: A problem with the eCall system has occurred. If the indicator stays red or blacked out even after you have restarted the vehicle, have the system check by a dealer.
- Blinking in red: The level of the backup battery is too low. While the power system is on, the battery undergoes recharging. Once the battery has been recharged to a certain level, the eCall indicator lights up in green.



Your vehicle may NOT be able to connect to an operator if:

The 12-volt battery is too low.

Your vehicle is in an area without adequate cellular coverage.

There is a problem with the eCall system itself or its peripheral equipment such as the microphone or speakers.

Your vehicle is equipped with the 112-based eCall service system.

The 112-based eCall service is a public service of general interest and is accessible free of charge.

The 112-based eCall in-vehicle system is activated when the power mode is set to ON. In the event of a collision, the system will determine the degree of the impact based on information collected from the onboard sensors and, depending on the severity of the collision, will initiate the emergency call.

The 112-based eCall in-vehicle system can also be triggered manually, if needed.

Manual Emergency Call ▶ P.347

Any processing of personal data through the 112-based eCall in-vehicle system shall comply with the personal data protection rules provided for in Directives 95/46/EC (replaced by Regulation (EU) 2016/679) and 2002/58/EC, and in particular, shall be based on the necessity to protect the vital interests of the individuals in accordance with Article 7(d) of Directive 95/46/EC (replaced by Regulation (EU) 2016/679).

Processing of such data is strictly limited to the purpose of for which the single European emergency number 112 is designated.

Recipients of data processed by the 112-based eCall in-vehicle system are the relevant public safety answering points designated by the respective public authorities of the country in which they are located and are the first to receive and for which the single European emergency number 112 is designated.

Your vehicle may NOT be able to connect to a PSAP operator if:

- Both the 12V battery and backup battery are too low.
- Your vehicle is in an area without adequate cellular coverage.
- There is a problem with the eCall system itself or its peripheral equipment such as the microphone or speakers.

The backup battery is designed to operate for at least 3 years, after which it may need to be replaced.

The backup battery is not available for direct purchase. For replacement, visit a dealer.

Data privacy

The 112-based eCall in-vehicle system is designed to ensure that:

- Data contained in the system memory is not available outside the system before an eCall is triggered.
- It is not traceable or subject to any constant tracking during its normal operation status.

- Data in the internal memory of the system is automatically and continuously removed.

For the system to function normally, the vehicle location data is constantly overwritten in the internal memory of the system so that the last three locations of the vehicle are kept up-to-date.

The log of activity data in the 112-based eCall invehicle system is kept for no longer than necessary for attaining the purpose of handling the emergency eCall and in any case not beyond 13 hours from the moment an emergency eCall was initiated.

Owner's rights

The data subject (the vehicle's owner) has a right of access to data and as appropriate to request the rectification, erasure or blocking of data, concerning him or her, the processing of which does not comply with the provisions of Directive 95/46/EC (replaced by Regulation (EU) 2016/679).

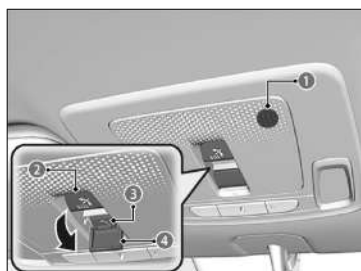
Any third parties to whom the data have been disclosed have to be notified of such rectification, erasure or blocking carried out in compliance with this Directive, unless it proves impossible or involves a disproportionate effort.

The data subject has a right to complain to the competent data protection authority if he or she considers that his or her rights have been infringed as a result of the processing of his or her personal data.

Honda eCall Service Information:

If you have any questions about eCall, contact the office relevant to the country in which you reside. See the service book or your local Honda website for a list of offices.

Manual Emergency Call



- ① Microphone
- ② SOS Cancel Button
- ③ SOS Button
- ④ Cover

If you need to make an emergency call, you can establish a connection manually. Press the **SOS** button and hold it for more than 0.5 seconds.

To cancel a call, press the **SOS** cancel button for more than 0.5 seconds, before 5 seconds have elapsed since the **SOS** button was pressed.

The **SOS** button is protected by a cover. Open the cover to gain access.

When an emergency call is initiated, the vehicle speakers are disabled so that you can hear the operator.



Do NOT press the button while you are driving. If you need to contact an operator, park the vehicle in a safe place before you make a call.



If the eCall system at first fails to connect to an operator, it will try again until a connection is established. However, if two minutes have elapsed since the first try was attempted, the system will no longer attempt to establish a connection.



The **SOS** cancel button does not cancel a call once the system is connected to an operator.

Vehicle Information

Specifications

About Specifications 350

Identification Numbers

Vehicle Identification Number (VIN) and Motor
Number 352

Devices that Emit Radio Waves

About Devices that Emit Radio Waves 353

Declaration of Conformity Content Outline

About Outline 356

Open Source Licence

Summary 357

Specifications

About Specifications

Basic Information

Model	Super-N
Curb Weight	1,097 kg (2,418 lbs)
Maximum Permissible Weight	See the certification label on the passenger's doorjamb
Maximum Permissible Axle Weight	See the certification label on the passenger's doorjamb

Air Conditioning

Refrigerant Type	HFO-1234yf (R-1234yf)
Charge Quantity	295 - 345 g (10.4 - 12.2 oz)

12-Volt Battery

Capacity	32AH(5)/40AH(20)
----------	------------------

Washer Fluid

Tank Capacity	1.5 L (1.32 Imp qt)
---------------	---------------------

Light Bulbs

Headlights (Low Beam)	LED	
Headlights (High Beam)	LED	
Front Turn Signal Lights	LED	
Position/Daytime Running Lights	LED	
Side Turn Signal Lights(on Door Mirrors)	LED	
Brake Lights	LED	
Taillights	LED	
Rear Turn Signal Lights	LED	
Back-Up Lights	LED	
Rear Fog Light	LED	
High-Mount Brake Light	LED	
Rear Licence Plate Light	LED	
Charge Light	LED	
Interior Lights	Map Lights	LED
	Ceiling Light	LED
	Foot Lights	LED
	Ambient Lights	LED

Brake Fluid

Specified	Brake Fluid with DOT 3 or DOT 4
-----------	---------------------------------

Transmission Fluid

Specified	Honda BEV-Type 2.0
-----------	--------------------

Tyre

Regular	Size	185/55R15 82V
	Pressure	See the label on driver's doorjamb
Wheel Size	Regular	15 x 6J

Honda TRK Air Compressor

A weighted
emission sound
pressure level 90 dB (A)

A weighted
sound power level 82 dB (A)

Brake

Type	Power assisted
Front	Ventilated disc
Rear	Drum
Parking	Electric parking brake system

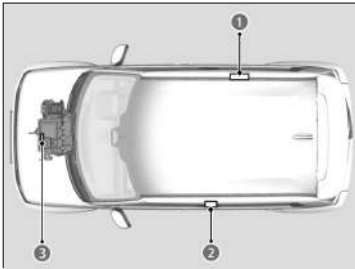
Vehicle Dimensions

Length	3,599 mm (141.7 in)
Width	1,573 mm (61.9 in)
Height	1,608 mm (63.3 in)
Wheelbase	2,516 mm (99.1 in)
Track	Front 1,349 mm (53.1 in)
	Rear 1,346 mm (53.0 in)

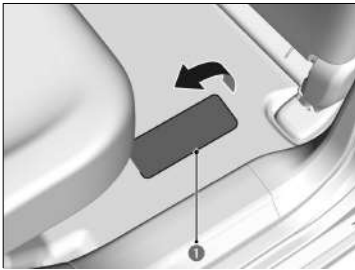
Identification Numbers

Vehicle Identification Number (VIN) and Motor Number

Your vehicle has a 17-digit vehicle identification number (VIN) used to register your vehicle for warranty purposes, and for licensing and insuring your vehicle. The locations of your vehicle's VIN and motor number are shown as follows.



- ① Vehicle Identification Number
- ② Certification Label/Vehicle Identification Number/Motor Number
- ③ Motor Number



- ① Cover

The interior vehicle identification number (VIN) is located under the cover.

It is prohibited to cover, paint, weld, cut, perforate, alter or remove the VIN.

Devices that Emit Radio Waves

About Devices that Emit Radio Waves

The following products and systems on your vehicle emit radio waves when in operation.

BCM Keyless Access System
http://continental-homologation.com/honda  Hereby, Continental Automotive GmbH declares that this model [41580430] is in compliance with the essential requirements and other relevant provisions of Radio Equipment Regulations 2017. The full text of the UK declaration of conformity is available at the following internet address: http://continental-homologation.com/honda Short range device for remote control Continental Automotive GmbH Siemensstrasse 12 D-93055 Regensburg Germany Frequency band: 125kHz +/- 3kHz Maximum transmitted output: 66dBuA/m at 10m Importer Name: Honda Motor Europe Ltd Postal address: Cain Road, Bracknell, Berkshire, RG12 1HL, United Kingdom

FOB Keyless Access System
http://continental-homologation.com/honda  Hereby, Continental Automotive GmbH declares that this model [TP_4] is in compliance with the essential requirements and other relevant provisions of Radio Equipment Regulations 2017. The full text of the UK declaration of conformity is available at the following internet address: http://continental-homologation.com/honda Short range device for remote control Continental Automotive GmbH Siemensstrasse 12 D-93055 Regensburg Germany Frequency band: 433.92MHz +/-16KHz Maximum transmitted output: 1mW Importer Name: Honda Motor Europe Ltd Postal address: Cain Road, Bracknell, Berkshire, RG12 1HL, United Kingdom

Hands-Free Telephone System

<https://www.alpsalpine.com/alpine/e/research/doc/>

Hereby, ALPS ALPINE CO., LTD. declares that the radio equipment type AH00ICB 2 is in compliance with the relevant statutory requirements.

The full text of the UK declaration of conformity is available at the following internet address:

<https://www.alpsalpine.com/alpine/e/research/doc/>

Infotainment Ctrl Box

20-1 Yoshima Industrial Park, Iwaki, Fukushima Japan 970-1192

2400-2483.5MHz

5150-5250MHz

5470-5730MHz

5725-5835MHz

2.4GHz = 18.45mW

5GHz = 14.36mW

Importer Name: Honda Motor Europe Ltd

Postal address: Cain Road, Bracknell, Berkshire, RG12 1HL, United Kingdom

Telematics Control Unit

<https://www.changxing.sh.cn/global/en/contract-us/doc/>



Hereby, Shanghai Changxing declares that this model is in compliance with the essential requirements and other relevant provisions of Radio Equipment Regulations 2025.

The full text of the UK declaration of conformity is available at the following internet address:

<https://www.changxing.sh.cn/global/en/contract-us/doc/>

telecommunication equipment

Changxing Building, No. 888 Bibo Road, Pudong New Area, Shanghai

2G

880MHz-915MHz

3G

1710MHz-1785MHz

4G

703MHz-733MHz, 814MHz-862MHz, 1920MHz-1980MHz, 2300MHz-2400MHz,

2500MHz-2570MHz, 2570MHz-2620MHz

35dBm

Importer Name: Honda Motor Europe Ltd

Postal address: Cain Road, Bracknell, Berkshire, RG12 1HL, United Kingdom

Digital Key

<http://continental-homologation.com/honda>



Hereby, Continental Automotive GmbH declares that this model A2C775684 is in compliance with the essential requirements and other relevant provisions of Radio Equipment Regulations 2017.

The full text of the UK declaration of conformity is available at the following internet address:

<http://continental-homologation.com/honda>

Control Unit

Continental Automotive GmbH

Siemensstraße 12, D-93055 Regensburg, Germany

BLE frequency range: 2.402GHz to 2.48GHz

BLE Maximum Output Power: +10dBm

Importer Name: Honda Motor Europe Ltd

Postal address: Cain Road, Bracknell, Berkshire, RG12 1HL, United Kingdom

Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)

<https://www.continental-automotive.com/en/microsites/homologation/honda.html>



Hereby, Continental declares that the radio equipment type TIS-09 is in compliance with Directive 2014/53/EU.

The full text of the EU declaration of conformity is available at the following internet address:

<https://www.continental-automotive.com/en/microsites/homologation/honda.html>

Tire pressure monitoring sensor

Continental Automotive GmbH

Siemensstrasse 12 93055 Regensburg Germany

433.876MHz - 433.964MHz

< 10mW

Importer Name: Honda Motor Europe Ltd

Postal address: Cain Road, Bracknell, Berkshire, RG12 1HL, United Kingdom

Declaration of Conformity Content Outline

About Outline

Compressor

UK CA Product: Mini Compressor Model: MC30CEU Serial number: 2017080000101 - 000000000000 Manufacturer: ITW Global Tool Repair Europe GmbH Carl-Benz-Str. 10 60486 Frankfurt Germany The declaration is issued under the sole responsibility of the product manufacturer. The object of the declaration (described above) is in conformity with the relevant UK Statutory Instruments and their amendments: 2006 No 1831 The Supply of Machinery (Safety) Regulations 2008 2016 No 1031 The Electromagnetic Compatibility Regulations 2016 No further details than the product described above, to which this declaration of conformity refers to, is in conformity with the essential requirements of the following standards: Machinery Directive DIRECTIVE 2006/42/EC OF THE EUROPEAN PARLIAMENT AND OF THE COUNCIL OF 17 May 2006 on machinery, and amending Directive 90/269/EEC. EMC Directive DIRECTIVE 2014/53/EU OF THE EUROPEAN PARLIAMENT AND OF THE COUNCIL OF 23 October 2014 on the harmonisation of the laws of the Member States relating to electromagnetic compatibility. The technical documentation for the machinery is available from: ITW Global Tool Repair Unit 7, The Millers, Whitford Way Whitford Business Park, Consett, Co. DH5, United Kingdom ITW Global Tool Repair Europe GmbH 67063 Dill Wolfgang-Craig-Keller General Manager <i>Wolfgang-Craig-Keller</i> Witnessed by: ITW Global Tool Repair Europe GmbH	www.itw.com ITW Global Tool Repair
--	--

Open Source Licence

Summary

Meter Open Source Licence

The software embedded in this product includes open source software. Refer to the following website for details regarding the open source software.

https://www.nippon-seiki.co.jp/global/business_ic_meter/

TCU Open Source Licence

https://www.changxing.sh.cn/gnu_license.txt

Index

Numbers

12-Volt Battery	300
If the Battery Is Dead	330
Indicator	263
Maintenance (Checking the 12-Volt Battery)	301

A

About System Updates	160
About Your In-Vehicle Infotainment	153
ABS (Anti-lock Brake System)	101
Accessory Power Socket	143
Acoustic Vehicle Alerting System	136
Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow	232
Indicator (Amber)	265
Indicator (White/Green)	233
Additives	
Window Washer Fluid	290
Adjusting	
Clock	165
Front Seats	68
Head Restraints	69
Headlights	121
Rear Seats	69
Sound	167
Steering Wheel	65
Agile Handling Assist	138
Air Conditioning System (Climate Control System)	149
Changing the Mode	149
Defrosting the Windscreen and Windows	128
Recirculation/Fresh Air Mode	149
Sensors	152
Using Automatic Climate Control	150
Air Pressure	295, 350
Airbags	43
After a Collision	43
Event Data Recorder	4
Front Airbags (SRS)	44
Indicator	48, 263
Sensors	43
Side Airbags	46

Side Curtain Airbags	47
Android Auto	183
Anti-lock Brake System (ABS)	101
Indicator	263
Apple CarPlay	181
Audio	276
Audio Playback via <i>Bluetooth</i> ® Device	175
Audio Playback via USB Device	174
Audio Playback via Wired Connection	172
Audio Remote Controls	156
Audio System Basic Operation	153
Audio System Theft Protection	153
Auto High-Beam	122
Automatic Brake Hold	98
Indicator	100
Automatic Brake Hold System	
Indicator	99
Automatic Lighting Off Feature	120
Automatic Power Off	88
Average Energy Consumption	275
Average Speed	275

B

Battery	
12-Volt Battery Charging System Indicator	263
High Voltage	15
Belts (Seat)	73
Beverage Holders	144
<i>Bluetooth</i> ® Device	175
Brake Assist System	95
Brake System	95
Anti-lock Brake System (ABS)	101
Automatic Brake Hold	98
Brake Assist System	95
Foot Brake	95
Indicator (Amber)	262
Indicator (Red)	262
Parking Brake	95
Braking	
Fluid	290
Brightness Setting	279
Built-in Key	56
Bulb Replacement	313
Bulb Specifications	350

C

Calendar	278
Carrying Luggage	22, 85
Certification Label	352
Changing Bulbs	313
Charge Lid	
Unable to Unlock	342
Charging	108
AC Charger	112
DC Charger	114
High Voltage Battery	15
Charging Connector	
Unable to Disengage	343
Child Restraint System	27
Booster Seats	41
Child Restraint System for Infants	29
Child Restraint System for Small Children	30
Installing a Child Restraint System with a Lap/ Shoulder Seat Belt	38
Larger Children	40
Rear-facing Child Restraint System	29
Selecting a Child Restraint System	30
Using a Tether	39
Child Safety	27
Cleaning the Exterior	309
Cleaning the Interior	307
Climate Control System	149, 305
Changing the Mode	149
Defrosting the Windscreen and Windows	128
Recirculation/Fresh Air Mode	149
Sensors	152
Using Automatic Climate Control	150
Clock	165, 270
Adjusting the Clock	165
Wallpaper Setup	165
CMBS (Collision Mitigation Braking System)	216
Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS)	216
Indicator (Amber)	265
Indicator (Grey)	277
Compatible iPod, iPhone, and USB Flash Drives	198
Compatible USB Flash Drives	198
iPod and iPhone Model Compatibility	198

Recommended Devices	199
Connecting a Device	157
About Wired Connections	158
About Wireless Connections	158
Cup Holders	144
Current Mode for Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow, the Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS), and Traffic Jam Assist	269
Customized Features	190
Defaulting All the Settings	196
How to Customize the General Settings	190
How to Customize the Profile Settings	196
How to Customize the Vehicle Settings	194

D

Daytime Running Lights	121
DAB (Digital Audio Broadcasting)	170
Dead Battery	330
Deceleration Paddle Selector	132
Declaration of Conformity Content Outline	356
Defaulting All the Settings	196
Defaulting General Settings	196
Defaulting Vehicle Settings	197
Defrosting the Windscreen and Windows	128
Devices that Emit Radio Waves	353
Digital Audio Broadcasting (DAB)	170
Directional Signals (Turn Signal)	118
Display Audio Basic Operations	161
About Media Playback	171
Adjusting the Sound	167
Audio Playback via Bluetooth® Device	175
Audio Playback via USB Device	174
Audio Playback via Wired Connection	172
Changing the Display Settings	167
Clock	165
Home Screen	162
Playing DAB (Digital Audio Broadcasting)	170
Playing the Radio	168
Radio Data System (RDS)	169
Reboot Audio	161
Start Up	161
System Updates	163
Trip Computer	164
User Information	177

Display Audio Customized Features	190
Customized Features	190
Display Audio Other Operations	180
Android Auto	183
Apple CarPlay	181
Hands-Free Telephone System	184
Wi-Fi Connection	180
Display Settings	167, 279
Door Mirrors	79
Doors	
Door and Tailgate Open Message	21
Keys	53
Locking/Unlocking the Doors from Inside	62
Drive Mode System	130
Driver Information Interface	271
Switching the Display	271
Driving	
Braking	95
Turning on the Power	89
DRIVE MODE switch	130

E

Elapsed Time	276
Electric Power Steering (EPS) System Indicator	264
Electric Vehicle	12
Emergency	340
Emergency Call (eCall)	345
Emergency Stop Signal	101
Exterior Care (Cleaning)	309
Exterior Mirrors	79

F

Flat Tyre	317
Floor Mats	308
Fluids	
Brake	290
Windshield Washer	290
Fog Light	120
Foot Brake	95
Front Airbags (SRS)	44
Front Seats	
Adjusting	68
Front Wide View Camera	212

Fuses	334
Inspecting and Changing	338
Locations	334, 336

G

G-Meter	276
Gauges	268
General Information on the Audio System	198
Glass (care)	308, 310
Glove Box	143

H

Hands-Free Telephone System	184
Auto Phone Call Transfer	189
Auto Sync Phone	189
Favourite Contacts	186
HFT Status Display	185
Keypad	189
Latest Call History	189
Making a Call	187
Options During a Call	189
Phone Menu Screen	189
Receiving a Call	188
Ringtone	189
Hazard Warning Button	9
Head Restraints	67
Headlight Integration with Wipers	120
Headlights	118
Adjuster	121
Auto High-Beam	122
Operating	118
Heated Steering Wheel	148
Heater	149
Heater (Steering Wheel)	148
Heaters (Seat)	147
HFT (Hands-Free Telephone System)	184
High Beam	119
High Beam Indicator	119
High voltage battery thermal problem Warning	333
High Voltage Battery	15
High Voltage Battery Charge Level Gauge	268
High Voltage Battery Temperature Gauge (BATT TEMP)	272

High Voltage System Coolant	288
Hill Start Assist System	103
Home Screen	162
Honda SENSING	208

I

iPod	198
iPhone	198
Identification Numbers	
Motor	352
Vehicle Identification	352
Immobilizer System	54
Indicator	54
In-Vehicle Infotainment	153
About System Updates	160
About Your In-Vehicle Infotainment	153
Audio Remote Controls	156
Audio System Basic Operation	153
Audio System Theft Protection	153
Connecting a Device	157
Mode change switch bar	155
Selecting an audio source	154
System status	155
USB Ports	155
Indicators	260
12-Volt Battery Charging System	263
Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow (Amber)	265
Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow (White/Green)	233
Anti-lock Brake System (ABS)	263
Automatic Brake Hold	100
Automatic Brake Hold System	99
Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS) (Amber)	265
Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS) (Grey)	277
Electric Power Steering (EPS) System	264
High Beam	119
Immobilizer System	54
Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) (Amber)	265
Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) (White/Green)	242

Lights On	118
Low Tyre Pressure/TPMS	264
Parking Brake and Brake System (Amber)	262
Parking Brake and Brake System (Red)	262
Parking Sensor	264
Power System	263
READY	89
Road Departure Mitigation (Amber)	266
Road Departure Mitigation (Grey)	277
Road Departure Mitigation System Steering Assist Auto OFF	266
Safety Support (Amber)	266
Safety Support (Green/Grey)	277
Seat Belt Reminder	74, 263
Security System Alarm	55
Shift Position	91
Single Pedal (Green/Grey)	134
Supplemental Restraint System	49, 263
Transmission System	265
Turn Signal Indicators	118
Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) OFF	138, 264
Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System	137, 264
Information	280
Instant Energy Consumption	273
Interior Care (Cleaning)	307
Interior Lights	141
Interior Rearview Mirror	79

J

Jack	326
Jump Starting	330

K

Key Number Tag	57
Keyless Access System	59
Keys	53
Key Number Tag	57
Remote Transmitter	58
Replacing the Remote Battery	314

L

Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)	241
Indicator (Amber)	265

Indicator (White/Green)	242
Legal Information on Apple CarPlay/Android Auto	204
Licence Information	202
Lights	118, 313
Bulb Replacement	313
Daytime Running Lights	121
High Beam Indicator	119
Interior	141
Lights On	118
Rear Fog Light	120
Turn Signals	118
Load Limits	85
Locking/Unlocking	
From Inside	62
Using a Key	61
Using the Keyless Access System	59
Using the Remote Transmitter	58
Without Using a Key	62
Lockout Prevention System	62
Low Speed Braking Control	223
Low Tyre Pressure/TPMS	
Indicator	264
Lower Anchorages	34
Luggage (Load Limit)	85

M

Maintenance	282
12-Volt Battery	300
Brake Fluid	290
Cleaning	307
Climate Control System	305
Precautions	282
Remote Transmitter	314
Replacing Light Bulbs	313
Safety	283
Transmission Fluid	286
Tyres	295
Under the Bonnet	284
Map Lights	142
Media Playback	171
Meters, Gauges	268
Mirrors	
Adjusting	79

Door	79
Interior Rearview	79
Modifications (and Accessories)	24
Motor	
Number	352

N

Navigation	276
Numbers (Identification)	352

O

Odometer	270
Open Source Licences	202, 357
Opening	
Tailgate	344
Opening/Closing	
Bonnet	284
Power Windows	81
Outside Temperature	269

P

Parking	95, 105
Parking Brake	95
Parking Brake and Brake System Indicator (Amber)	262
Parking Brake and Brake System Indicator (Red)	262
Parking Sensor Indicator	264
Parking Sensor System	254
Phone	276
Position Lights	118
Post-Collision Braking System	51
Power Flow	273
Power Mode	88
Power Mode Reminder	88
Power System	
Turning on	89
Power System Indicator	263
Power Window Lock Button	82
Power Windows	81
POWER Button	88
POWER/CHARGE Gauge	272

Precautions While Driving	23
Rain	23
Pregnant Women	77
Puncture (Tyre)	317

R

Radio	168
Radio Data System (RDS)	169
Range	270, 274
RDS (Radio Data System)	169
Rear Demister Button	128
Rear Fog Light	120
Rear Seat Reminder	72
Rear Seats	
Adjusting	69
Rear View Camera	106
Rearview Mirror	79
Reboot Audio	161
Recommended Devices	199
Reduced stopping power Warning	332
Regenerative Energy and Regenerative Braking	13
Regulations	353
Remote Transmitter	58
Replacement	
Bulbs	313
Fuses	334
Tyres	297
READY Indicator	89
Road Departure Mitigation System	227
Indicator (Amber)	266
Indicator (Grey)	277
On and Off	229
Road Departure Mitigation System Steering Assist	
Auto OFF Indicator	266

S

Safe Driving	18
Safety Check	21
Safety Labels	52
Safety Message	1
Safety Support	277
Indicator (Amber)	266
Indicator (Green/Grey)	277

Seat Belts	73, 277
Automatic Seat Belt Tensioners	75
Checking	77
Fastening	75
Installing a Child Restraint System with a Lap/Shoulder Seat Belt	38
Pregnant Women	77
Reminder	74
Warning Indicator	74, 263
Seat Heaters	147
Seats	66
Adjusting	66
Front Seats	68
Rear Seats	69
Seat Heaters	147
Security System	55
Immobilizer System Indicator	54
Security System Alarm Indicator	55
Selecting a Child Restraint System	30
Shift Button	91
Operation	91
Shift Position Indicator	91
Shifting (Transmission)	91
Side Airbags	46
Side Curtain Airbags	47
Simple	272
Single Pedal Control	134
Sonar Sensors	213
Specifications	350
Speedometer	268
SRS Airbags (Airbags)	44
Start Up	161
Steering Wheel	
Adjusting	65
Heater	148
Stopping	105
Super Locking	60
Supplemental Restraint System (SRS)	44
Switches (Around the Steering Wheel)	9, 10
System Updates	163

T

Tachometer (RPM)	272
------------------	-----

Tailgate	83
Opening/Closing	83
Unable to Open	344
Tailgate Outer Handle	84
Temperature	
Outside Temperature	269
Temperature Sensor	269
Tools	312
Towing a Trailer	86
Towing Your Vehicle	
Emergency	340
Traffic Jam Assist	245
Traffic Sign Recognition System	250, 269
Transmission	91
Fluid	286
Indicator	265
Operating the Shift Button	91
Shift Button Indicator	91
Shift Position Indicator	91
Trip Computer	164
Trip Meter	274
Troubleshooting	
Blown Fuse	334
Emergency Towing	340
Power System Won't Start	327
Puncture/Flat Tyre	317
Warning Indicators	260
Turn Signals	118
Turning on the Power	89
Does Not Start	327
If the Battery Is Dead	330
Tyre Angle Monitor	280
Tyre Chains	297
Tyre Pressure Monitor	277
Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)	139
Tyre Repair Kit	317
Tyres	295
Air Pressure	295, 350
Checking and Maintaining	295
Inspection	296
Puncture/Flat Tyre	317
Rotation	299
Tyre Repair Kit	317
Wear Indicators	296

Winter Tyres	297
--------------	-----

U

User Information	177
USB Device	174
USB Flash Drives	198
USB Ports	155

V

Vanity Mirrors	7
Vehicle Identification Numbers	352
Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA)	136
OFF Indicator	264
On and Off	138
System Indicator	264
VSA (Vehicle Stability Assist)	136
VSA Mode	279
VSA OFF Indicator	138

W

Wallpaper Setup	165
Warning Indicators On/Blinking	261
Warning Labels	52
Watts	350
Wear Indicators (Tyre)	296
When a Warning Appears	332
Wi-Fi Connection	180
Window Washers	
Adding/Refilling Fluid	290
Switch	125
Windows(Opening and Closing)	81
Windscreen	
Wipers and Washers	125
Windshield	
Cleaning	308, 310
Washer Fluid	290
Wiper Blades	292
Winter Tyres	297
Wipers and Washers	
Checking and Replacing Wiper Blades	292
Front	125
Rear	126
Wired Connection	172

Worn Tyres..... 296